

USER MANUAL

PROTEUS-III

2611011024000

VERSION 1.14

JANUARY 13, 2026

WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK MORE THAN YOU EXPECT

MUST READ

Check for firmware updates

Before using the product, make sure you use the most recent firmware version, data sheet, and user manual. This is especially important for Wireless Connectivity products that were not purchased directly from Würth Elektronik eiSos. A firmware update on these respective products may be required.

We strongly recommend including the possibility of a firmware update in the customer system design.

Contents

Overview of helpful application notes	9
1. Revision history	12
2. Abbreviations	15
3. Introduction	16
3.1. Operational description	16
3.1.1. Key features	17
3.1.2. Connectivity	18
3.2. Block diagram	19
3.3. Ordering information	19
4. Electrical specifications	20
4.1. Operating conditions	20
4.2. Absolute maximum ratings	20
4.3. Power consumption	21
4.3.1. Static	21
4.3.2. Dynamic	22
4.4. Radio characteristics	24
4.5. Pin characteristics	25
5. Pinout	26
6. Quick start	29
6.1. Minimal pin connections	29
6.2. Antenna connection	31
6.2.1. On-board PCB antenna	31
6.2.2. External antenna	31
6.3. Power up	32
6.4. Quickstart example	33
7. Functional description	36
7.1. Operation modes	36
7.2. Radio module states	36
7.3. State indication using the LED pins	38
7.4. Sleep mode	38
7.5. Identification of a Proteus-III device on the radio	39
7.6. Connection based data transmission, with or without security	39
7.6.1. Further information for a secure connection setup	40
7.6.1.1. Just works mode	40
7.6.1.2. StaticPasskey mode	43
7.6.1.3. LescPasskey mode	46
7.6.1.4. LescNumComp mode	49
7.6.1.5. Bonding	52
7.7. Unidirectional connectionless data transmission using Beacons	56
7.8. Energy-efficient distance estimation solutions	57

7.9. Configure the module for low power consumption	57
7.10. Start the direct test mode (DTM)	58
7.11. Using the 2 MBit and LE Coded phy	61
7.12. Connection setup using LE Coded phy	61
7.13. Radio compatibility to other Proteus devices	64
8. Host connection	65
8.1. Serial interface: UART	65
8.1.1. Reset behaviour	65
9. The command interface	66
9.1. Scan for other modules in range	68
9.1.1. CMD_SCANSTART_REQ	68
9.1.2. CMD_SCANSTOP_REQ	68
9.1.3. CMD_GETDEVICES_REQ	69
9.1.3.1. Example 1	70
9.1.4. CMD_RSSI_IND	70
9.1.5. CMD_BEACON_RSP	71
9.2. Setup connections	72
9.2.1. CMD_CONNECT_REQ	72
9.2.2. CMD_CONNECT_IND	72
9.2.3. CMD_SECURITY_IND	73
9.2.4. CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP	73
9.2.5. CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ	73
9.2.6. CMD_DISCONNECT_IND	74
9.2.7. CMD_PHYUPDATE_REQ	74
9.2.8. CMD_PHYUPDATE_IND	75
9.2.9. CMD_PASSKEY_REQ	75
9.2.10. CMD_PASSKEY_IND	76
9.2.11. CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND	76
9.2.12. CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ	77
9.2.13. CMD_GETBONDS_REQ	77
9.2.13.1. Example 1	78
9.2.14. CMD_DELETEBONDS_REQ	78
9.2.14.1. Example 1	79
9.2.14.2. Example 2	79
9.2.15. CMD_ALLOWUNBONDEDCONNECTIONS_REQ	80
9.3. Transmit and receive data	81
9.3.1. CMD_DATA_REQ	81
9.3.2. CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP	81
9.3.3. CMD_DATA_IND	82
9.3.4. CMD_SETBEACON_REQ	82
9.3.5. CMD_BEACON_IND	82
9.4. Configuring the module and modifying the device settings	84
9.4.1. CMD_SET_REQ	84
9.4.1.1. Example 1	85
9.4.1.2. Example 2	85

9.4.2. CMD_GET_REQ	86
9.4.2.1. Example 1	86
9.5. Manage the device state	87
9.5.1. CMD_GETSTATE_REQ	87
9.5.1.1. Example 1	88
9.5.2. CMD_RESET_REQ	88
9.5.3. CMD_SLEEP_REQ	89
9.5.4. CMD_SLEEP_IND	89
9.5.5. CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ	89
9.5.6. CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ	90
9.5.7. CMD_UARTENABLE_IND	91
9.5.8. CMD_BOOTLOADER_REQ	92
9.6. Run the Bluetooth test modes	93
9.6.1. CMD_DTMSTART_REQ	93
9.6.2. CMD_DTM_REQ	93
9.6.2.1. Example: Transmission, 16 times 0x0F, channel 0	95
9.6.2.2. Example: Receiver, channel 0	96
9.6.2.3. Example: Transmission, carrier test, channel 0	97
9.6.2.4. Example: Set TX power to -4 dBm	97
9.6.2.5. Example: Set PHY to 2 MBit mode	98
9.7. Switching GPIOs by remote control	99
9.7.1. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_REQ	99
9.7.1.1. Example: Configure two GPIOs to output high	100
9.7.2. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READCONFIG_REQ	102
9.7.2.1. Example: Read the current GPIO configuration	103
9.7.3. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ	104
9.7.3.1. Example: Configure two GPIOs of the connected remote device to output high	105
9.7.4. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READCONFIG_REQ	107
9.7.4.1. Example: Read the current GPIO configuration of the connected remote device	108
9.7.5. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_REQ	109
9.7.5.1. Example: Set a remote output GPIO to low	110
9.7.6. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_REQ	111
9.7.6.1. Example: Read the values of remote GPIOs	112
9.7.7. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_REQ	113
9.7.7.1. Example: Set a local output GPIO to low	114
9.7.8. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_REQ	115
9.7.8.1. Example: Read the values of local GPIOs	116
9.7.9. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_IND	117
9.7.9.1. Example: Two GPIOs have been configured by the connected remote device to output high	117
9.7.10. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_IND	118
9.7.10.1. Example: GPIOs have been written via remote access	118
9.7.11. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_IND	119
9.7.11.1. Example: GPIOs of the remote device have been written by its local host	119

9.8. Other messages	120
9.8.1. CMD_ERROR_IND	120
9.9. Message overview	121
10. User settings - Module configuration values	125
10.1. FS_DeviceInfo: Read the chip type and OS version	125
10.1.1. Example 1	126
10.2. FS_FWVersion: Read the firmware version	127
10.2.1. Example 1	127
10.3. FS_MAC: Read the MAC address	128
10.3.1. Example 1	128
10.4. FS_BTMAC: Modify the Bluetooth conform MAC address	129
10.4.1. Example 1	129
10.4.2. Example 2	129
10.5. FS_SerialNumber: Read the serial number of the module	131
10.5.1. Example 1	131
10.6. RF_DeviceName: Modify the device name	132
10.6.1. Example 1	132
10.6.2. Example 2	132
10.7. RF_StaticPasskey: Modify the static passkey	134
10.7.1. Example 1	134
10.7.2. Example 2	134
10.8. RF_SecFlags: Modify the security settings	135
10.8.1. Example 1	137
10.8.2. Example 2	137
10.9. RF_SecFlagsPerOnly: Modify the security settings (Peripheral only mode)	138
10.9.1. Example 1	138
10.9.2. Example 2	138
10.10. RF_ScanFlags: Modify the scan behavior	139
10.10.1. Example 1	139
10.10.2. Example 2	139
10.11. RF_BeaconFlags: Interpret the advertising data	141
10.11.1. Example 1	141
10.11.2. Example 2	142
10.12. RF_AdvertisingTimeout: Modify the advertising timeout	143
10.12.1. Example 1	143
10.12.2. Example 2	143
10.13. RF_AdvertisingFlags: Configure the advertising packet	144
10.13.1. Example 1	144
10.13.2. Example 2	145
10.14. RF_ScanFactor: Modify the scan factor	146
10.14.1. Example 1	146
10.14.2. Example 2	146
10.15. RF_ScanTiming: Modify the scan timing	147
10.15.1. Example 1	148
10.15.2. Example 2	148
10.16. RF_ConnectionTiming: Modify the connection timing	149
10.16.1. Example 1	150

10.16.2. Example 2	150
10.17. RF_TXPower: Modify the output power	152
10.17.1. Example 1	152
10.17.2. Example 2	152
10.18. RF_SPPBaseUUID: Configure the SPP base UUID	154
10.18.1. Example 1	154
10.18.2. Example 2	154
10.19. RF_SPPServiceUUID: Configure the SPP service UUID	156
10.19.1. Example 1	156
10.19.2. Example 2	156
10.20. RF_SPPRXUUID: Configure the SPP RX UUID	157
10.20.1. Example 1	157
10.20.2. Example 2	157
10.21. RF_SPPTXUUID: Configure the SPP TX UUID	158
10.21.1. Example 1	158
10.21.2. Example 2	158
10.22. RF_Appearance: Configure the appearance of the device	159
10.22.1. Example 1	159
10.22.2. Example 2	159
10.23. UART_ConfigIndex: Modify the UART speed	160
10.23.1. Example 1	162
10.23.2. Example 2	162
10.24. UART_TransparentTimeout: Modify the transparent mode timeout	163
10.24.1. Example 1	163
10.24.2. Example 2	163
10.25. UART_TransparentMaxPayload: Modify the transparent mode max payload	164
10.25.1. Example 1	164
10.25.2. Example 2	164
10.26. UART_TransparentETX: Modify the transparent ETX characters	165
10.26.1. Example 1	165
10.26.2. Example 2	165
10.27. UART_TransparentETXConfig: Configure the usage of the ETX in transparent mode	166
10.27.1. Example 1	166
10.27.2. Example 2	166
10.28. RF_CompanyIdentifier: Configure the company identifier of the device	168
10.28.1. Example 1	168
10.28.2. Example 2	168
10.29. CFG_Flags: Configure the module	169
10.29.1. Example 1	169
10.29.2. Example 2	169
10.30. DIS_ManufacturerName: Configure the manufacturer name	171
10.30.1. Example 1	171
10.30.2. Example 2	171
10.31. DIS_ModelNumber: Configure the model number	173
10.31.1. Example 1	173
10.31.2. Example 2	173

10.32. DIS_SerialNumber: Configure the serial number	174
10.32.1. Example 1	174
10.32.2. Example 2	174
10.33. DIS_HWVersion: Configure the HW version	175
10.33.1. Example 1	175
10.33.2. Example 2	175
10.34. DIS_SWVersion: Configure the SW version	176
10.34.1. Example 1	176
10.34.2. Example 2	176
10.35. DIS_Flags: Configure the device information service	177
10.35.1. Example 1	177
10.35.2. Example 2	177
11. Timing parameters	181
11.1. Reset and sleep	181
11.2. Bluetooth LE timing parameters	181
11.3. Connection establishment	181
11.4. Connection based data transmission	182
11.4.1. Maximum data throughput	183
12. Peripheral only mode	185
12.1. Reasons to use the peripheral only mode	185
12.2. Restrictions	185
12.3. How to use the peripheral only mode	186
12.4. More information	186
12.4.1. Radio	186
12.4.2. UART	186
13. Remote GPIO control	189
13.1. PWM	194
13.2. Supported GPIO_IDs for remote and local control	195
14. Customizing the Proteus-III	196
14.1. DIS - Device information service	196
14.1.1. Make the module's firmware version visible on the radio	196
14.2. UUID	196
14.3. Appearance	197
15. Custom firmware and configuration	198
15.1. Custom configuration of standard firmware	198
15.2. Customer specific firmware	198
15.3. Customer firmware	198
16. Firmware updates	200
16.1. Firmware flashing using the production interface	200
16.2. Firmware update using the Proteus-III OTA bootloader	200
16.2.1. Firmware update steps using the nRF Device Firmware Update app	202

17. Firmware history	203
17.1. Known issues	204
18. Hardware history	205
19. Design in guide	206
19.1. Advice for schematic and layout	206
19.2. Designing the antenna connection	208
19.3. Antenna solutions	209
19.3.1. Wire antenna	209
19.3.2. Chip antenna	209
19.3.3. PCB antenna	210
19.3.4. Antennas provided by Würth Elektronik eiSos	210
19.3.4.1. 2600130021 - Himalia dipole antenna	211
20. Reference design	212
20.1. EV-Board	213
20.2. Radiation characteristic of the module's internal antenna	216
20.3. Trace design	217
20.4. Battery powered systems	220
20.4.1. Recharging secondary cell batteries	220
20.4.2. End device testing	220
21. Manufacturing information	221
21.1. Moisture sensitivity level	221
21.2. Soldering	221
21.2.1. Reflow soldering	221
21.2.2. Cleaning	222
21.2.3. Potting and coating	223
21.2.4. Other notations	223
21.3. ESD handling	223
21.4. Safety recommendations	224
22. Product testing	225
22.1. Würth Elektronik eiSos in-house production tests	225
22.2. EMS production tests	225
23. Physical specifications	227
23.1. Dimensions	227
23.2. Weight	227
23.3. Module drawing	228
23.4. Footprint WE-FP-4+	229
23.5. Antenna free area	229
24. Marking	230
24.1. Lot number	230
24.2. General labeling information	231
25. Information for explosion protection	232

26. Bluetooth SIG listing/qualification	233
27. Regulatory compliance information	234
27.1. Important notice EU	234
27.2. Important notice FCC	234
27.3. Conformity assessment of the final product	234
27.4. Exemption clause	234
27.5. EU Declaration of conformity	236
27.6. RED-DA Cybersecurity statement	237
27.7. UK Declaration of conformity	238
27.8. FCC Compliance Statement (US)	239
27.8.1. FCC certificate	239
27.9. IC Compliance Statement (Canada)	240
27.9.1. IC certificate	240
27.10. FCC and IC requirements to OEM integrators	241
27.10.1. Pre-certified antennas	242
27.11. TELEC radio law approval (Japan)	243
27.11.1. Label	243
27.11.2. Certified antennas	244
27.11.3. TELEC certificate	244
27.12. SRRC Compliance Statement (China)	245
27.12.1. SRRC certificate	245
27.13. ETA-WPC (India)	246
27.13.1. ETA-WPC certificate	246
27.14. Certification of the end device	248
28. References	249
29. Important notes	250
30. Legal notice	250
31. License terms	251
A. Additional CRC8 Information	255
A.1. Example CRC8 Implementation	255
A.2. CRC8 Test Vectors	255
B. Example code for host integration	256

Overview of helpful application notes

Application note ANR004 - Peripheral only mode

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR004>

The Bluetooth® LE modules Proteus-I,-II,-III provide the so called "peripheral only mode", that supports a serial cable replacement by offering a transparent UART bridge functionality. This document explains how to set the module into the corresponding operation mode and how to establish a Bluetooth® LE connection to a Bluetooth® LE enabled central device.

Application note ANR006 - Proteus High throughput mode

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR006>

The Proteus-II and Proteus-III provide the so called "high throughput mode". This mode sends several data packets per connection interval to increase the data throughput to a remote Bluetooth® LE device. This application note describes how to set the radio module in this mode, and how to test it in a module-to-module setup. It presents measurements and test scenarios for throughput measurements.

Application note ANR008 - Wireless Connectivity Software Development Kit

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR008>

To ease the integration of the Würth Elektronik eiSos radio modules into an application, Würth Elektronik eiSos offers the corresponding Software Development Kit (SDK) for most commonly used host processors. This SDK contains drivers and examples in C-code to communicate with the corresponding radio module. This application note shows which SDKs are available and describes how to download and use them.

Application note ANR009 - Proteus-III Advanced developer guide

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR009>

This advanced developer guide covers the details on the Proteus-III radio module that are required to implement compatible App for smart devices. It covers the documentation on the SPP-like Bluetooth® LE profile, the used protocols and data coding for arbitrary user payload. In addition all information required to develop a custom firmware on the Proteus module hardware platform are provided within.

Application note ANR010 - Range estimation

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR010>

This application note presents the two most used mathematical range estimation models, Friis and two ray ground reflection, and its implementation in the range estimation tool of the RED-EXPERT.

Application note ANR014 - Proteus-I,-II,-III Quickstart

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR014>

This application note describes how to set up a Bluetooth® LE connection between one of a Proteus-I,-II,-III and a Bluetooth® LE enabled device, like a smart phone. Furthermore the data transmission via Bluetooth® LE is presented.

Application note ANR019 - Proteus-III UART vs. SPI - a comparison

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR019>

This application note shows the differences, advantages and disadvantages between the Proteus-III module with UART interface compared to the module variant with SPI slave interface.

Application note ANR020 - Proteus-III Remote GPIO control

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR020>

The Proteus-III module offers six remote controllable GPIOs that can be configured as input, output and PWM. This application note describes that feature which provides the possibility to perform simple and quick hostless operation for simple applications.

Application note ANR026 - Proteus beacons

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR026>

Besides the standard Bluetooth® LE connection based data transmission, it is possible to transmit data via Bluetooth® LE without an active connection in a broadcast message, called "Beacon". This application note describes what beacons are and how to they can be used.

Application note ANR027 - Bluetooth qualification guide

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR027>

Every product containing Bluetooth® technology needs to be qualified at the Bluetooth® SIG (special interest group). This application note explains the steps to be done to gain a Bluetooth® qualification for the end product using a Würth Elektronik eISOS Bluetooth® LE radio module.

Application note ANR030 - nRF Connect

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR030>

This application note gives a short overview about the options to create a custom firmware for Würth Elektronik eISOS radio modules by using the hardware platform and the embedded nRF5x system on chip. It presents options on firmware development environments and accessories (like SDKs) for the use within the nRF5 ecosystem. The reader is informed on how to access to a multitude of radio standards (like Bluetooth® LE, Bluetooth® MESH, Bluetooth® LE Audio, Matter, Zigbee, Thread, Wirepas) for custom firmware developments whilst the hardware platform can stay the same.

Application note ANR031 - Certification of custom modules

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR031>

This application note explains how certifications of a standard product can be used to gain the certification of a customized product. This is done for firmware, which has been adapted by Würth Elektronik eiSos, as well as for firmware written by customer.

Ground plane effects on radio module antennas

<http://www.we-online.com/ANR033>

The ground plane plays a critical role in the performance of radio module antennas, affecting parameters such as radiation pattern, gain, and efficiency. This application note provides practical insights into how ground plane size, shape, and placement influence antenna behavior, offering guidance for optimal integration in real-world designs. Simulation results and measurement data are included to illustrate key effects and support design decisions.

1. Revision history

Manual version	FW version	HW version	Notes	Date
1.0	1.1.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initial release 	February 2020
1.1	1.1.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Limitation of the RF_DeviceName to a maximum of 31 bytes Added Annex Additional CRC8 Information and Example code for host integration 	June 2020
1.2	1.1.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> corrected capacitor number. C28 changed to C26 in section Trace design 	July 2020
1.3	1.1.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Updated section Trace design. Included figure On-board PCB antenna and External antenna connection. 	August 2020
1.4	1.1.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Updated Declaration of EU conformity to latest Version of EN 300 328 after successfully passing corresponding delta test in chapter Regulatory compliance information. Added package name in chapter Footprint WE-FP-4+. 	October 2020
1.5	1.1.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Updated Declaration of EU conformity in chapter Regulatory compliance information. 	December 2020
1.6	1.1.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Schematic is updated in chapter EV-Board. 	February 2021
1.7	1.3.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New features of firmware version 1.3.0. Please refer to chapter Firmware history. 	July 2021

1.8	1.4.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New features of firmware version 1.4.0. Please refer to chapter Firmware history. • Added overview of helpful application notes • Updated document style 	July 2022
1.9	1.4.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Added radiation characteristics in chapter 20.2 • Updated firmware update description in chapter 16.2.1 • Added new radio certification for UKCA in chapter 27.7, China in chapter 27.12 and India in chapter 27.13 • Added chapter on radio compatibility to other Proteus radio modules in chapter 7.13 	May 2023
1.10	1.4.0	1.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Added certificates in addition to the required compliance statements in chapter Regulatory compliance information. 	June 2023
1.11	1.5.0	1.5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Added known issue KI-002 in chapter 17.1 • Updated chapter 12 Peripheral only mode • Added information concerning new firmware version in chapter 17 Firmware history • Extended chapter DIS - Device information service with description how to make the firmware version visible on the radio 	December 2023
1.12	1.5.0	1.5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Added chapter Product testing • Updated section Designing the antenna connection with more information regarding the example 	October 2024

1.13	1.5.0	1.5	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Added chapter Certification of the end device and Hardware history	October 2025
1.14	1.5.0	1.5	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Update CE declaration in chapter Regulatory compliance information.	January 2026

* For firmware history see chapter Firmware history

2. Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Name	Description
BTMAC		Bluetooth® conform MAC address of the module used on the RF-interface
CS	Checksum	Byte wise XOR combination of the preceding fields
DSSS	Direct sequence spread spectrum	Technique to spread a message on the radio
DTM	Direct test mode	Mode to test Bluetooth® specific RF settings
EV (Board)	Evaluation (Board)	Proteus-III populated on motherboard with USB interface for test and evaluation purpose
FEC	Forward error correction	Technique to correct received erroneous radio messages
GAP	Generic Access Profile	The GAP provides a basic level of functionality that all Bluetooth® devices must implement
I/O	Input/Output	Pinout description
LESC	Low energy secure connection	Elliptic curve encryption method for Bluetooth® LE encryption and authentication
LPM	Low power mode	Mode for efficient power consumption
LRM	Long range mode	Radio mode with higher range and lower throughput
MAC		MAC address of the module
MTU	Maximum transmission unit	Maximum packet size of the Bluetooth® connection
Payload		The intended message in a frame / package
RF	Radio frequency	Describes wireless transmission
RSSI	Receive Signal Strength Indicator	The RSSI indicates the strength of the RF signal. Its value is always printed in two's complement notation
Soft device		Operating system used by the nRF52 chip
SPI	Serial Peripheral Interface	Allows the serial communication with the module
UART	Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter	Allows the serial communication with the module
	User settings	Settings to configure the module. Any relation to a specific entry in the user settings is marked in a special font and can be found in chapter 10
[HEX] 0xhh	Hexadecimal	All numbers beginning with 0x are hexadecimal numbers. All other numbers are decimal, unless stated otherwise

3. Introduction

3.1. Operational description

The Proteus-III module is a radio sub module/device for wireless communication between devices such as control systems, remote controls, sensors et cetera. On the basis of Bluetooth® LE 5.1 [1] it offers a fast and secure data transmission of data packages between two or more parties (point to point topology). A serial interface (UART) is available for communication with the host system.

The Proteus-III uses the Bluetooth® LE standard to provide general data transmission between several devices. The standard itself offers a wide range of configurations and possibilities to suit and optimize sophisticated customer applications. To fulfill the needs and specifications of such applications a tailored firmware can be developed on the basis of the Proteus-III hardware. This includes the connection and communication to custom sensors, custom Bluetooth® LE profiles, timing configurations, security configuration as well as power consumption optimizations.

Even with it's small dimensions of 8 x 12 mm the Proteus-III provides a strongly miniaturized integrated PCB antenna. Beside it is possible to connect an external antenna if high radio ranges are of interest.

The main functionality is accessible through pads with edge castellation. This offers easy prototype building as it is suitable for hand soldering. More optional GPIOs without enlarging the size are accessible through land grid pads that can only be connected through reflow process.

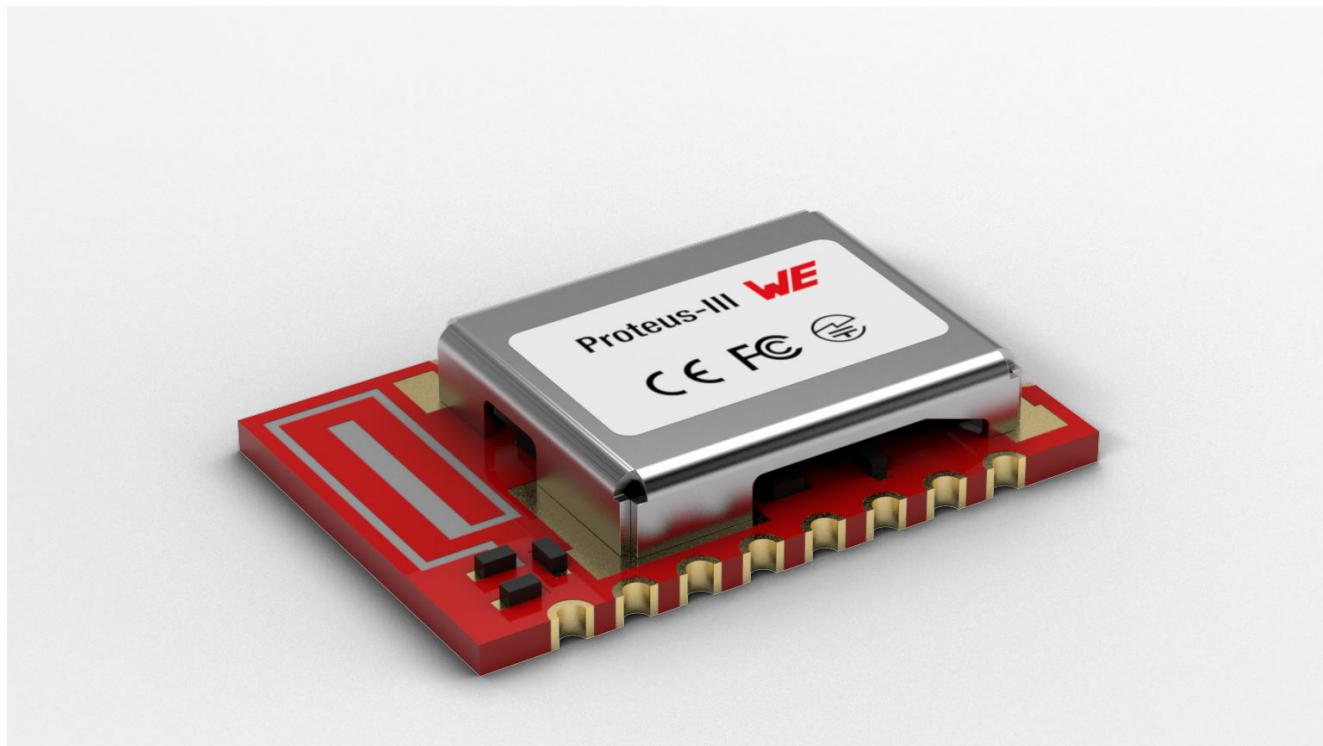


Figure 1: Proteus-III

3.1.1. Key features

The Proteus-III offers the following key features that are described in the manual in more detail:

SPP-like connection-based secured data transmission: The Proteus-III firmware implements an SPP-like Bluetooth® LE profile that allows the bidirectional data transmission between several Proteus-III and/or to other Bluetooth® LE devices implementing the WE SPP-like profile. Any module in the network can initiate a connection setup. Secured connections allow the transmission of encrypted data.

Remote GPIOs: The Proteus-III firmware allows to switch free module GPIOs via remote control. More information can be found in chapter 13.

Advanced customization capabilities: The configurable Device Information Service (DIS), the UUID and the appearance of the Bluetooth® LE profile, enable to personalize the Proteus-III to fuse with the user's end product.

Low power position sensing solutions: The current TX power of any Proteus-III is always transmitted with each advertising packet when the module is in command mode. With this, distance estimation and position sensing solutions can be realized conveniently by performing a passive scan.

Fast serial interface: The Proteus-III offers a UART-interface to communicate with a host using a user-defined baud rate and a simple command interface.

Latest microprocessor generation provided by Nordic Semiconductor nRF52 series: The heart of the Proteus-III is a Bluetooth® LE chip of the nRF52 series offering high performance values combined with low power consumption. It is a 32 Bit ARM Cortex-M4F CPU with 1024 kB flash + 256 kB RAM and up to 8 dBm output power.

Bluetooth® 5 stack: The Bluetooth® 5 stack enables fast and energy efficient data transmission using state-of-the-art technology of Nordic Semiconductors.

High throughput mode: The Proteus-III contains the so called "High throughput mode" that allows to send up to 4 data packets per connection interval. This increases significantly the throughput. This mode and its usage is described in application note ANR006 [2].

All Bluetooth® LE roles supported: The integrated Bluetooth® LE stack supports all Bluetooth® LE roles. Depending on the current state of operation the Proteus-III firmware automatically switches its role to execute the user's instructions.

Flexible wired interfacing: The Proteus-III is equipped with extra pins suited for custom device/sensor connection. With help of these, a tailored firmware can be developed which is optimized to the customer's needs. The pins can be configured to various functions such as UART, SPI, I2C, ADC, PWM, NFC and GPIO.

OTA firmware update: The Proteus-III firmware provides over the air firmware update capabilities. Firmware updates can be applied using the Nordic Apps for cell phones.

Peripheral only mode: The Proteus-III firmware provides the "peripheral only" operation mode (see chapter 12), that allows the easy adaption of already existing custom hardware with the Bluetooth® LE interface. By default, this mode offers the static passkey pairing method

with bonding and a transparent UART interface. With this, custom hardware can be accessed by mobile Bluetooth® LE devices (like smart phones including a custom App) using an authenticated and encrypted Bluetooth® LE link without the need of configuring the module.

Additional Bluetooth® 5 radio modes: The Proteus-III provides the advanced radio modes 2 MBit mode for faster data transmission and the LE coded mode, that allows long range data transmissions. For more information, see chapter 7.11.

Long range connect: For backward compatibility reasons, a Bluetooth® LE connection is setup using the legacy 1 MBit radio mode and can then be updated to long range mode. The Proteus-III allows in addition to setup the connection immediately using the long range mode, such that even connections can be initiated on high distances. More information can be found in chapter 7.12.

Fast sensor data transmission via Beacons: The Proteus-III supports the transmission and reception of Beacons. Beacons are fast broadcast messages that allow the energy-efficient unidirectional transmission of data. Especially in sensor networks, this feature is suitable for the frequent transmission of measurement data as it avoids the need for a connection-based communication and therefore is more energy efficient.

3.1.2. Connectivity

The Bluetooth® LE standard allows to setup a network with various Bluetooth® LE devices from different manufacturers. To be able to communicate with Proteus-III devices, the WE SPP-like profile must be known and implemented by all network participants.

The advanced developer guide of Proteus-III (application note ANR009 [3]) contains the design data of the WE SPP-like profile, to implement it for example in smart phone apps.

3.2. Block diagram

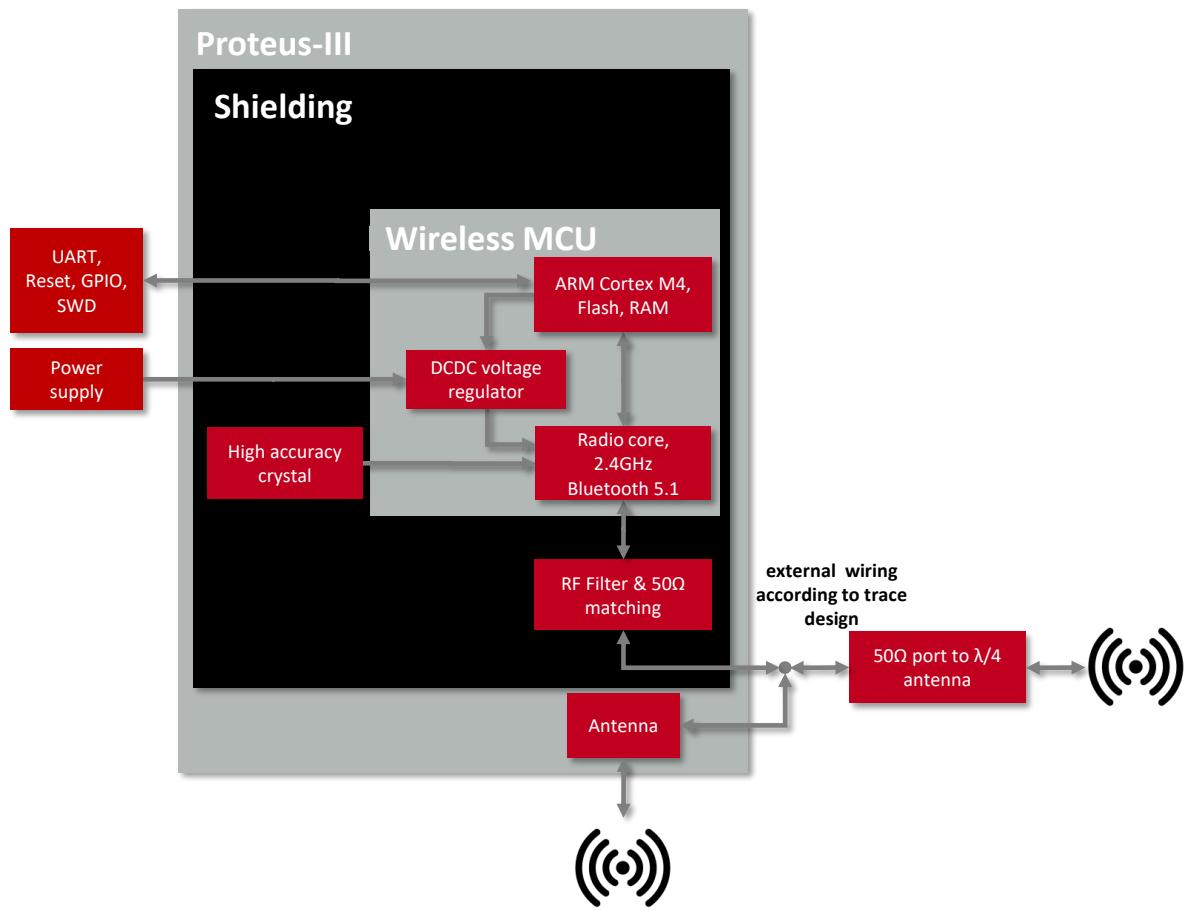


Figure 2: Block diagram of the module

3.3. Ordering information

WE order code	Description
2611011024000	Proteus-III Bluetooth® LE Module, Tape & Reel (UART)
2611011024010	Proteus-III-SPI Bluetooth® LE Module, Tape & Reel (4-wire SPI + interrupt pin)
2611019024001	Bluetooth® LE EV-Kit with Proteus-III EV-Board
2611036024001	USB Dongle Proteus-III USB radio stick, integrated antenna

Table 3: Ordering information

4. Electrical specifications

As not otherwise stated measured on the EV-Board Proteus-III-EV with $T = 25\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, $\text{VDDS} = 3\text{ V}$, $f = 2.44\text{GHz}$, internal DC-DC converter in use.

4.1. Operating conditions

Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Ambient temperature	-40	25	85	$^{\circ}\text{C}$
Supply voltage (VDDS)	1.8 ¹	3	3.6	V
Supply rise time (0V to $\geq 1.7\text{V}$)			60	ms

Table 4: Operating conditions



The radio module may not properly boot-up for VCC rise times longer than the specified maximum. Especially for end devices powered by secondary cell batteries special attention must be taken to meet these requirements during charging (see chapter Battery powered systems).



An instable supply voltage may significantly decrease the radio performance and stability.

4.2. Absolute maximum ratings

Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Supply voltage (VDD)	-0.3		+3.9	V
Voltage on any digital pin, $\text{VDD} < 3.6\text{ V}$	-0.3		$\text{VDD} + 0.3$	V
Voltage on any digital pin, $\text{VDD} \geq 3.6\text{ V}$	-0.3		3.9	V
Input RF level			10	dBm
Flash endurance	10 000			Write/erase cycles

Table 5: Absolute maximum ratings

¹Power fail comparator is set to 1.8 V ($\pm 5\%$) to avoid flash fail due to voltage drop.

4.3. Power consumption

4.3.1. Static

Continuous test mode	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
TX current consumption at RF_TXPower = 8		16.4 ¹		mA
TX current consumption at RF_TXPower = 0		6.4 ¹		mA
RX current consumption		6.25 ¹		mA
TX current consumption at RF_TXPower = 8		18.9 ²		mA
TX current consumption at RF_TXPower = 0		8 ²		mA
RX current consumption		7.7 ²		mA
Sleep (system off mode)		0.4		µA
Reduction through CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ		550		µA

Table 6: Power consumption for 100% transmission/reception



Due to the Bluetooth® LE time slot operation, the real operating currents are reduced significantly and depend on the user selectable advertising and connection interval settings.

¹Transmitter only with DC/DC converter from nRF52 data sheet, CPU current not included.

²Full module power consumption.

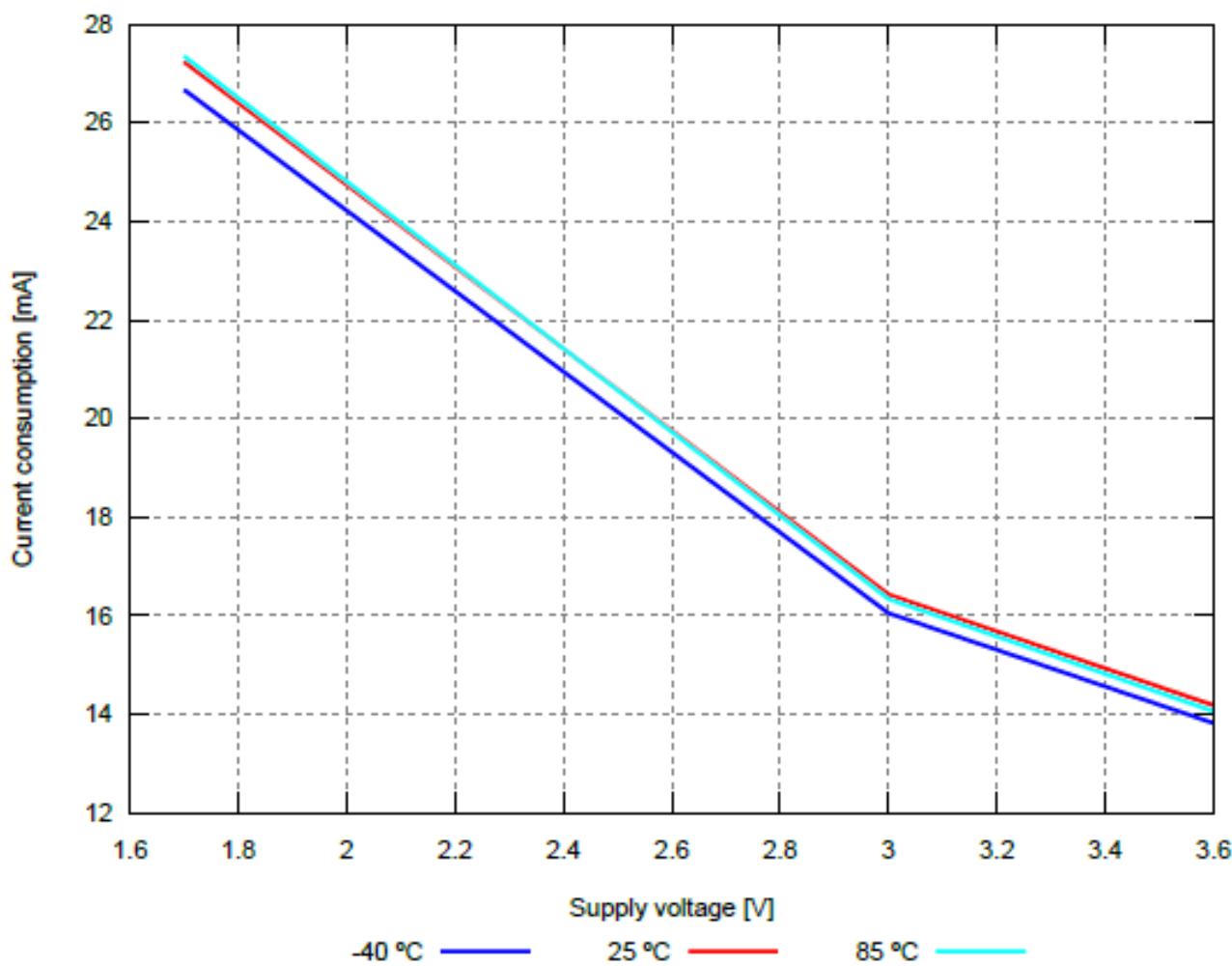


Figure 3: Radio transmitting @ 8 dBm output power, 1 Mbps Bluetooth® LE mode, Clock = HFXO, Regulator = DC/DC (typical values)

4.3.2. Dynamic

Besides the static TX, RX, idle and sleep current, the average current is of interest. Here an example for a typical behavior of a peripheral device in advertising mode (see Figure 4). Currents and state durations are dependent on the configuration of the module. In this state the module transmits the advertising packets on the three advertising channels.

Nordic Semiconductor provides an online tool calculating the average current of a Bluetooth® connection. It can be accessed at <https://devzone.nordicsemi.com/power/>.

Test setup

Chip	nRF52840 QIAAC0
Softdevice	sl40 6.I.0
Voltage	3.0 V
Regulator	DCDC

BLE event details

Interval	45.00 ms
Length	3.61 ms

Data transmission

On air data rate	1 Mbps
------------------	--------

Current consumption

BLE event total charge	13.29 μ C
LF clock calibration current	1.0 μ A
Idle current	3.1 μ A
Total average current	299 μ A

ckiges Ausschneiden

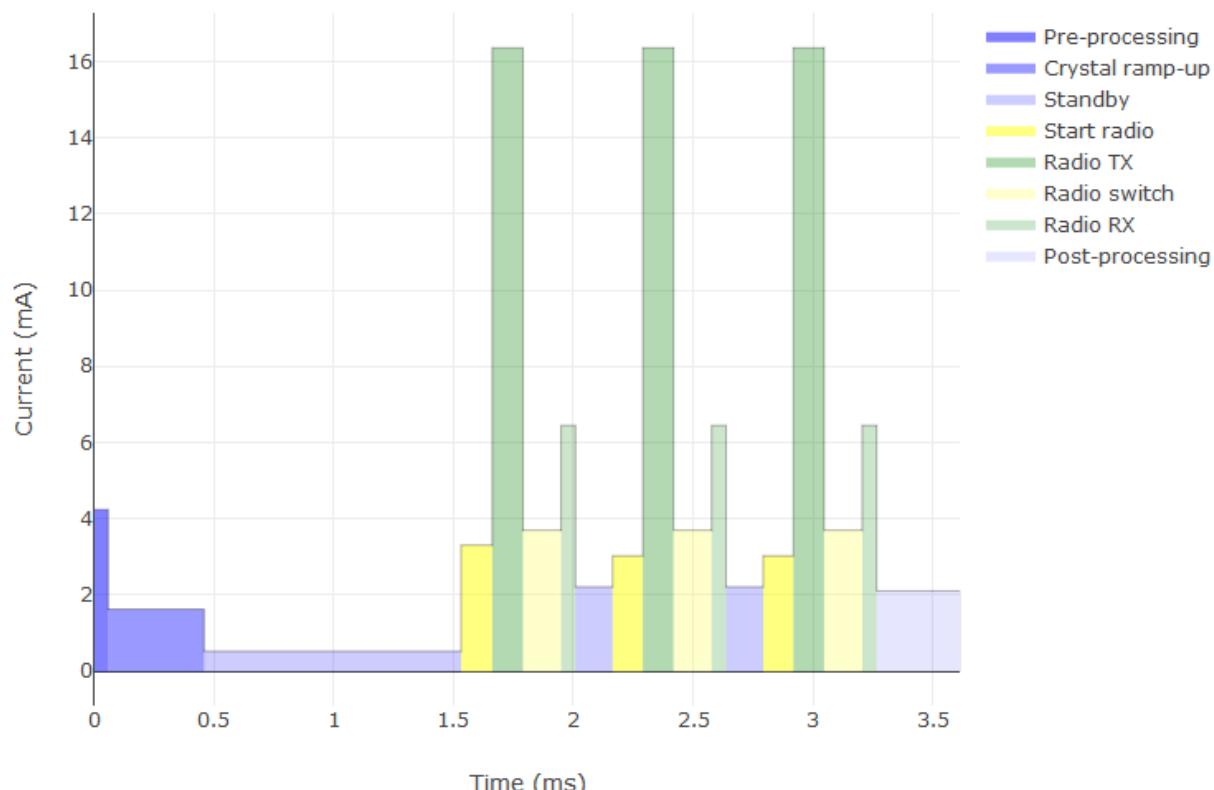


Figure 4: Current consumption calculation in advertising mode with 40 ms advertising interval with 8 dBm output power, UART/SPI disabled

4.4. Radio characteristics

Specifications of timing and RSSI value

Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
RSSI accuracy valid range ($\pm 2\text{dB}$)	-90		-20	dBm
Enable TX or RX delay		140		μs
Enable TX or RX delay (fast mode)		40		μs
Disable TX delay		6		μs
Disable RX delay		0		μs

Table 7: Timing and RSSI

Description	Typ.	Unit
Output power (RF_TXPower = 8, conducted)	+6	dBm
Output power integrated antenna (RF_TXPower = 8, e.r.p.)	+4	dBm
Input sensitivity conducted (BER=1E-3, 1Mbps)	-92	dBm
Input sensitivity integrated antenna (BER=1E-3, 1Mbps)	-90	dBm

Table 8: Transmit and receive power

All transmit and receive power levels are measured on the EV-Board. The values already include losses of transitions from module to motherboard to SMA or modules PCB antenna. They are realistic values for the end application. Sensitivity in the table above is stated for the common used bit error rate of 0.1%. In the table below the sensitivity is stated for a packet error rate of 1% with a payload length of 38 byte at different data rates. The PER 1% is a harder criteria resulting in 2 dBm less sensitivity.

Description	Typ.	Unit
1 Mbit Phy (PER 1%)	-90	dBm
2 Mbit Phy (PER 1%)	-87	dBm
LE coded S=2 (PER 1%)	-94	dBm
LE coded S=8 (PER 1%)	-97	dBm

Table 9: Sensitivity at different data rates

4.5. Pin characteristics

When configured as digital pin output "standard drive" is used in the Proteus-III firmware.

Description	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Input high voltage	0.7 × VCC		VCC	V
Input low voltage	VSS		0.3 × VCC	V
Current at VSS+0.4 V, output set low, standard drive , VDD \geq 1.7V	1	2	4	mA
Current at VSS+0.4 V, output set low, high drive, VDD \geq 2.7 V	6	10	15	mA
Current at VSS+0.4 V, output set low, high drive, VDD \geq 1.7 V	3			mA
Current at VDD-0.4 V, output set high, standard drive , VCC \geq 1.7V	1	2	4	mA
Current at VDD-0.4 V, output set high, high drive, VDD \geq 2.7 V	6	9	14	mA
Current at VDD-0.4 V, output set high, high drive, VDD \geq 1.7 V	3			mA
Internal pull-up resistance	11	13	16	k Ω
Internal pull-down resistance	11	13	16	k Ω

Table 10: Pin characteristics

5. Pinout

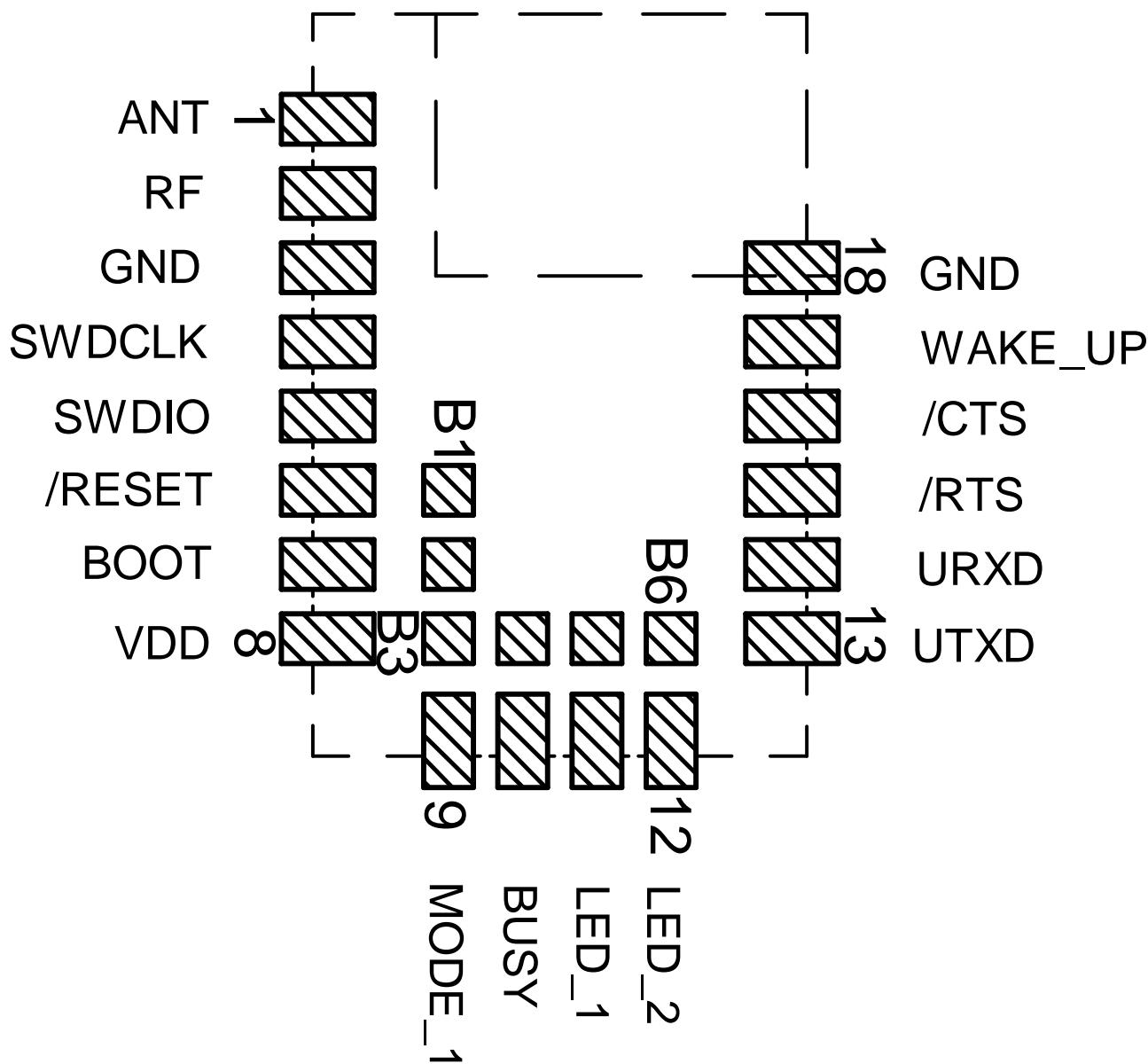


Figure 5: Pinout (top view)



The main functionality is accessible through pad 1 - 18 with edge castellation. This offers easy prototype building as it is suitable for hand soldering. More optional GPIOs without enlarging the size are accessible through the land grid pads B1 - B6 that can only be connected through reflow process.

No	μC Pin	Designation	I/O	Description
1		<i>ANT</i>	I/O	RF connection to PCB antenna. (see section 6.2)
2		<i>RF</i>	I/O	50 Ω RF connection through radio front end to transceiver part of chipset. (see section 6.2)
3		<i>GND</i>	Supply	Ground
4		<i>SWDCLK</i>	Input	Serial wire clock (SWD Interface). Uses internal pull down resistor. Do not connect if not needed.
5		<i>SWDIO</i>	Input	Serial wire input/output (SWD Interface). Uses internal pull up resistor. Do not connect if not needed.
6	P0.18	<i>/RESET</i>	Input	Reset pin. A low signal resets the module. Uses internal pull up resistor.
7	P0.02	<i>BOOT</i>	Input	Boot pin with internal pull up resistor ¹ during start-up. A low signal during and short after reset starts the module in OTA bootloader mode. Do not connect if not needed.
8		<i>VDD</i>	Supply	Supply voltage
9	P0.19	<i>MODE_1</i>	Input	Operation mode pin with internal pull down resistor ¹ during start-up. Low level or open: Normal Mode. High level: Peripheral only Mode. Do not connect if not needed.
10	P0.22	<i>BUSY</i>	Output	Indicates if module is busy with data transmission when using Peripheral only Mode (see section 12.4.2). Do not connect, if not needed.
11	P0.00/XL1 ²	<i>LED_1</i>	Output	Indicates the module state (active high). Do not connect if not needed.
12	P0.01/XL2 ²	<i>LED_2</i>	Output	Indicates the module state (active high). Do not connect if not needed.
13	P1.08	<i>UTXD</i>	Output	UART (Transmission), if UART is enabled ⁴ .
14	P1.09	<i>URXD</i>	Input	UART (Reception) with internal pull up resistor ¹ , if UART is enabled ⁴ .
15	P0.11	<i>/RTS</i>	Output	Static low, if flow control is disabled. /RTS signal, otherwise if UART is enabled ⁴ . Do not connect if not needed.
16	P0.12	<i>/CTS</i>	Input	Internal pull down ¹ , if flow control is disabled. /CTS signal, otherwise if UART is enabled ⁴ . Do not connect if not needed.
17	P0.03	<i>WAKE_UP</i>	Input	Wake-up will allow leaving the system-off mode or re-enabling the UART. Uses internal pull up resistor ¹ . Do not connect if not needed.

18		GND	Supply	Ground
B1	P0.09/NFC1 ³	B1	GPIO	Pin for remote GPIO access. Do not connect, if not needed.
B2	P0.10/NFC2 ³	B2	GPIO	Pin for remote GPIO access. Do not connect, if not needed.
B3	P0.23	B3	GPIO	Pin for remote GPIO access. Do not connect, if not needed.
B4	P1.00	B4	GPIO	Pin for remote GPIO access. Do not connect, if not needed.
B5	P0.21	B5	GPIO	Pin for remote GPIO access. Do not connect, if not needed.
B6	P0.07	B6	GPIO	Pin for remote GPIO access. Do not connect, if not needed.

Table 11: Pinout

¹Internal pull ups or pull downs are configured at start-up by the firmware installed in the SoC. The pull up on the /RESET pin cannot be disabled by firmware.

²Pins available to connect an external crystal in custom firmware. The standard firmware of Proteus-III does not implement this function.

³NFC pins available for NFC function in custom firmware. The standard firmware of Proteus-III does not implement this function.

⁴If UART is disabled, this pin is input floating. UART can be disabled using the CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ command in command mode, or closing the Bluetooth® LE connection in peripheral only mode.

6. Quick start

6.1. Minimal pin connections

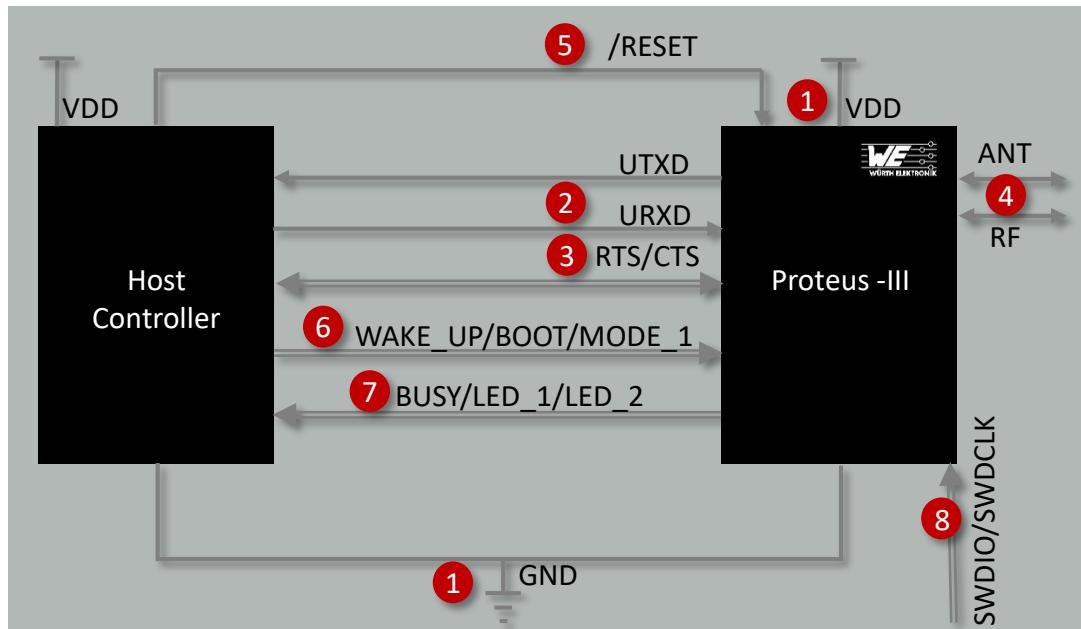


Figure 6: Minimal pin connections

The above image shows the steps to be performed to integrate the Proteus-III into a custom end device.

1. Supply voltage and ground
Connect the *VDD* and *GND* pins to supply the radio module with power.
2. UART serial interface to the host
Connect the UART pins *UTXD* and *URXD* to the host to control the module via host.
3. UART flow control
In case of fast UART baudrates higher than 115.2 kbaud the UART flow control is activated automatically. For lower data rates the flow control is inactive per default. If activated the */RTS* and */CTS* pins must be connected to the host controller.
4. Antenna connection
The antenna configuration must be performed. See chapter 6 . 2.
5. Reset
Connect the */RESET* pin to the host to allow a hard reset of the module.
6. (Optional) Wakeup from sleep, FOTA and mode selection

- Connect the *WAKE_UP* pin to the host controller to leave power saving modes, like the sleep mode.
- Connect the *BOOT* pin to the host controller to set the module into boot mode to enable firmware updates via radio.
- Connect the *MODE_1* pin to the host controller to switch between command and peripheral only mode.

7. (Optional) Status indication

Connect the *BUSY*, *LED_1* and *LED_2* pins to the host controller to allow easy indication of the status.

8. (Optional) Flash and debug interface

In case of custom firmware development, it is recommended to additionally have the pins *SWDIO* and *SWDCLK* accessible in order to support a fail-safe update of firmware. A standard socket on the customer's PCB for connecting a flash adapter can be useful for debugging purposes (e.g. a JTAG 2*10 pin header with 2.54 mm pin-to-pin distance).

If the module has to be connected to a PC, a converter (TTL to RS-232 or TTL to USB) has to be used. See chapter 5 for details on all pins. Please refer to the Proteus-III-EV schemes for a reference design.



The logic level of the module is based on 3V. A 5 V logic level must not be connected directly to the module.

6.2. Antenna connection

Proteus-III's smart antenna configuration enables the user to choose between two antenna options:

6.2.1. On-board PCB antenna

The Proteus-III has an on-board PCB antenna optimized for strong miniaturization operating in the 2.4 GHz frequency band. A simple short between the pins *RF* and *ANT* feeds the RF output of the module to the on-board antenna of the Proteus-III. In this configuration, the module does not require any additional RF circuitry. For US and Canada, please refer to the trace design in chapter 20.3.

6.2.2. External antenna

For applications that use an external antenna, the Proteus-III provides a 50Ω RF signal on pin *RF* of the module. In this configuration, pin *ANT* of the module has to be connected to ground and pin *RF* to the external antenna via 50Ω feed line. Refer to chapter 20 for further information.



The use cases for the integrated antenna are miniaturization and re-use of module certifications for the end-application. The use cases for the external antenna are optimization of radio range spending more space for the antenna and differentiated antenna for example when metal housings are used.

6.3. Power up

After powering the module the */RESET* pin shall be held for another Δt of 1 ms after the *VDD* is stable to ensure a safe start-up. The module will send a *CMD_GETSTATE_CNF* (0x02 41 02 00 01 01 41) to indicate "ready for operation" after the */RESET* pin was released.



Applying a reset (e.g. a host temporarily pulling the */RESET* pin down for at least 1 ms and releasing it again) after the *VCC* is stable will also be sufficient.

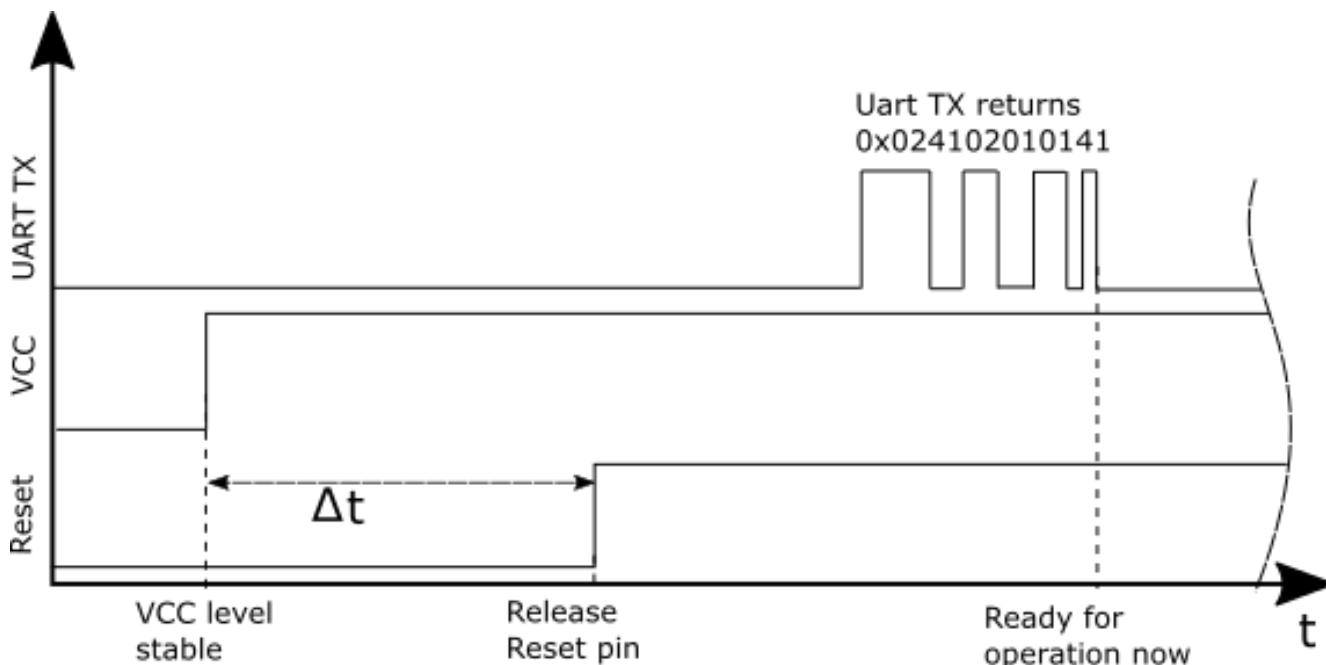


Figure 7: Power up

6.4. Quickstart example

This section describes how to quick start the data transmission between two Proteus-III modules. The goal is to setup a Bluetooth® LE connection between module A and module B, transmit some data and close the connection again.



The below commands are in hexadecimal notation. The arrow in the left column describes, whether it's a message from host to radio module, or vice versa. A request command is always sent from host to module (⇒). An indication, confirmation or response message is always sent from module to host (⇐).

For quick testing, a pair of Proteus-III-EV is recommended.

Connect the two devices (modules, EV-Boards or USB dongles) to a PC. A terminal program, for example *hterm*, is used to perform the communication via COM ports. The two corresponding COM ports have to be selected and opened with a default configuration of 115200 Baud, 8 data Bits, 1 stop Bit and parity set to none (8n1).



To reproduce the following sequence, note that the MAC address FS_BTMAC of every module is different. Thus it has to be replaced in the example commands below. In addition, the checksum has to be adjusted, when adapting any command. The command structure and checksum calculation is described in chapter 9.

Connection setup and first data transmission

1. Power-up the modules and make their UARTs accessible by the host(s) (115200 Baud, 8n1). After the power-up or after reset the following sequence is sent from the module to the host.

Info	Module A	Module B
← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module A started in ACTION_IDLE mode.	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module B started in ACTION_IDLE mode.		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

2. Request the FS_BTMAC of both modules.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4	02 10 01 00 04 17	
← Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module A is 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 50 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C2	
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4		02 10 01 00 04 17
← Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module B is 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 50 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 86

3. Connect module A to module B via Bluetooth®.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
← Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
← Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	
← Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14
← Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 E3	
← Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A7

4. Once the connection is active, data can be sent in each direction. Let us send a string "ABCD" from module B to module A.



The RSSI values will be different in your tests.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "ABCD" to module A		02 04 04 00 41 42 43 44 06
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now		02 44 01 00 00 47
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "ABCD" from FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xCA (-54 dBm)	02 84 0B 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 CA 41 42 43 44 90	
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully		02 C4 01 00 00 C7

5. Reply with "EFGH" to module B.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "EFGH" to module B	02 04 04 00 45 46 47 48 0E	
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now	02 44 01 00 00 47	
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "EFGH" from FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xC1 (-63dBm)		02 84 0B 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C1 45 46 47 48 D7
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully	02 C4 01 00 00 C7	

6. Now module A closes the Bluetooth® LE connection, so both modules will get a disconnect indication message.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ: Disconnect	02 07 00 00 05	
⇐ Response CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF: Request received, disconnect now	02 47 01 00 00 44	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed	02 87 01 00 16 92	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed		02 87 01 00 13 97

7. Functional description

7.1. Operation modes

The Proteus-III module acts as a slave and can be fully controlled by an external host. The Proteus-III supports the following operating modes:

- The **command mode**, where the Proteus-III can be controlled by the host controller via commands. The command mode allows to use all central and peripheral function of the radio module. The functions of the radio module, like data transmission or configuration tasks, can be triggered by predefined commands (see chapter 9) that are sent as telegrams over the UART interface.
- The **peripheral only mode** (see chapter 12) provides a transparent UART interface and supports only the peripheral functions of the radio module. Data transmission can be done by the host without using any commands.

7.2. Radio module states

The Proteus-III can operate in different states. Depending on the active state several commands of the command interface (see chapter 9) are permitted to modify the state, configure the module or transmit data over the radio interface. An overview of the different states and the corresponding allowed commands can be found in Figure 8.

When the Proteus-III is powered up, it starts in ACTION_IDLE state. In this state the module advertises (Bluetooth® LE role "peripheral"), such that other devices in range can detect it and connect to it.

The ACTION_IDLE state also allows to switch to ACTION_SCANNING state, where the module stops advertising and scans for other advertising Bluetooth® LE devices in range.

When leaving the ACTION_SCANNING state with the corresponding command, the module is in ACTION_IDLE state and starts advertising again.

The ACTION_CONNECTED state can be entered, either by getting a connection request from another Bluetooth® LE device, or by setting up a connection itself. In this case, it stops advertising and data can be transmitted and received to/from the connected Bluetooth® LE device. This state remains active as long as the module does not disconnect itself, and no disconnection request from the connected remote device is received.

When disconnecting, the module goes to ACTION_IDLE state and starts advertising again, to be ready for the next connection setup.

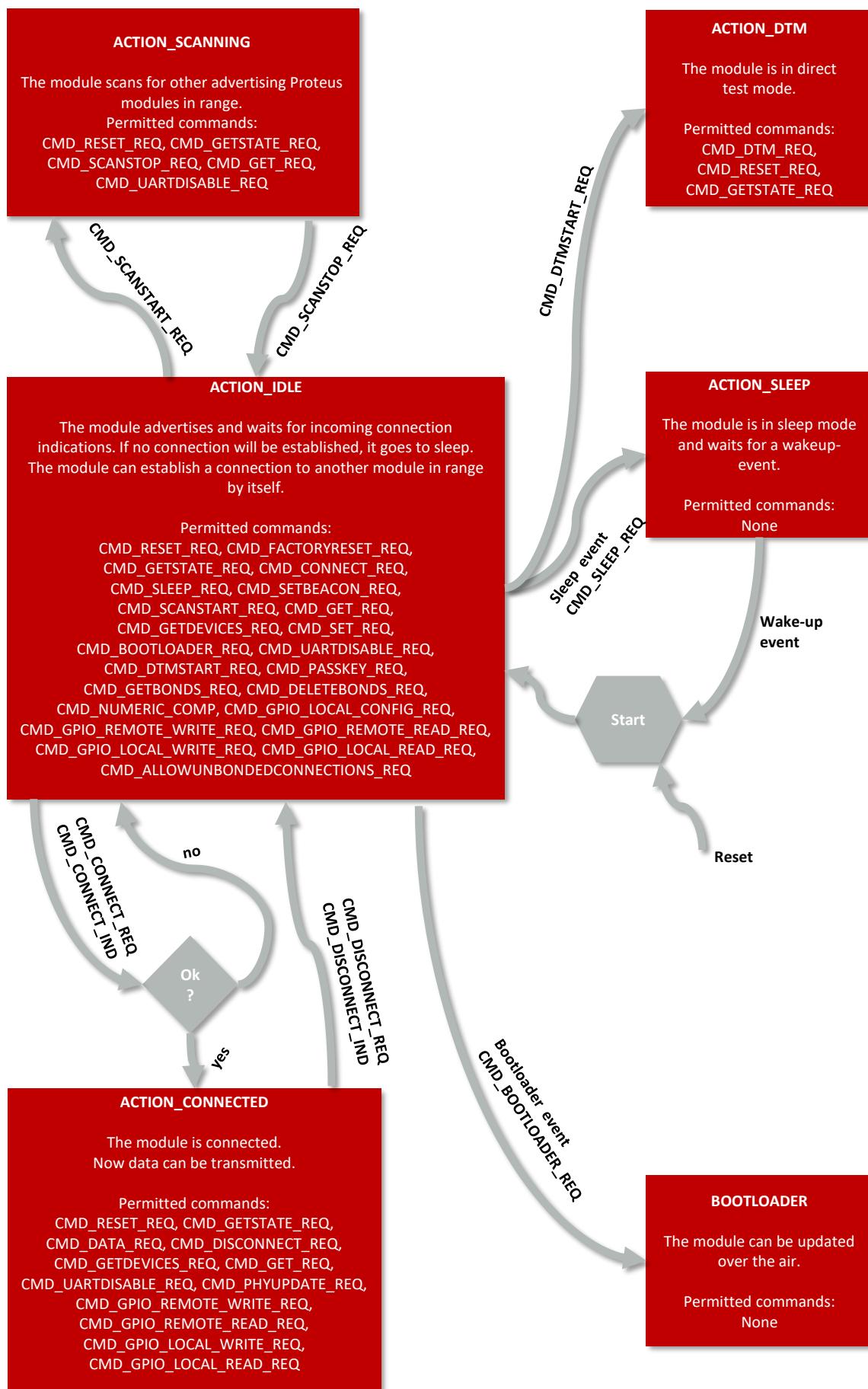


Figure 8: State overview

7.3. State indication using the LED pins

The pins *LED_1* and *LED_2* of the Proteus-III can be used to determine the module state. The states described in Figure 8 result in the following pin behavior. The pins on the Proteus-III are active high.

State	<i>LED_1</i>	<i>LED_2</i>
ACTION_IDLE	Blinking (On for 200 ms, Off for 2800 ms)	Off
ACTION_SCANNING	Blinking (On for 1000 ms, Off for 1000 ms)	Off
ACTION_CONNECTED	On	Off, On (as soon as the channel was opened successfully, see <i>CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP</i>)
ACTION_SLEEP	Off	Off
ACTION_DTM	Off	Off
BOOTLOADER waiting for connection	On	Off
BOOTLOADER connected, firmware update running	Off	On

Table 18: LED behavior of the Proteus-III

7.4. Sleep mode

Especially for battery-powered devices the ACTION_SLEEP mode (system-off mode) supports very low power consumption. It can be entered by sending the command *CMD_SLEEP_REQ* to the module. As response, the module will send a *CMD_SLEEP_CNF* and then enter the ACTION_SLEEP mode.

In ACTION_SLEEP mode the UART is disabled. Thus the module will not receive or transmit any data. To prevent leakage current, the host shall not pull the *URXD* to LOW level (as the module has an internal pull-up resistor enabled on this pin). The GPIO pins *B1-B6* are set to input during the sleep period.

To leave the ACTION_SLEEP mode and enter ACTION_IDLE state again, the module has to be woken up by applying a low signal to the *WAKE_UP* pin for at least 5 ms before releasing the signal back to high. The module then restarts completely, so that all volatile settings are set to default. A *CMD_GETSTATE_CNF* will be send when the module is ready for operation again.



Please note that the *WAKE_UP* pin has a second function. If the module is not in ACTION_SLEEP mode and the UART was disabled using the *CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ*, the UART can be re-enabled by applying falling edge, holding the line low for at least 10 ms before applying a rising edge and holding it high for at least 10 ms. In this case the module answers with a *CMD_UARTENABLE_IND* message.

7.5. Identification of a Proteus-III device on the radio

The Proteus-III can be identified on the radio interface by its FS_BTMAC. This FS_BTMAC is a Bluetooth®-conform MAC address, which is part of the data package sent during advertising in ACTION_IDLE mode. A FS_BTMAC has the size of 6 Bytes.

In ACTION_SCANNING state a module listens to the data packets of all advertising devices in range and stores their FS_BTMAC to an internal data base. With help of this FS_BTMAC a connection to the corresponding device can then be established using the CMD_CONNECT_REQ command.

To simplify the identification of Proteus-III devices on the RF-interface a short user-defined name (see RF_DeviceName) can be given to the module, which is also part of the advertising packet.



The FS_BTMAC consists of the Würth Elektronik eiSos MAC ID 0x0018DA followed by the module's serial number FS_SerialNumber.

7.6. Connection based data transmission, with or without security

In the Bluetooth® LE standard the data transmission typically is connection based. A connection between two devices can be secured or unsecured (default configuration). In any case, each data packet transmitted is acknowledged on the link layer, such that it is resent as long as it has not been received from the receiver. The following lines describe how to run the connection setup and data transmission using the Proteus-III.

If module A is supposed to setup a connection with module B, the host of module A must send the command CMD_CONNECT_REQ including the FS_BTMAC of module B to module A. If the FS_BTMAC of module B is unknown, a radio scan shall be run before by module A to discover all available Bluetooth® LE enabled devices in range.

After sending the command CMD_CONNECT_REQ, the module answers with a CMD_CONNECT_CNF to signal that the request has been understood and the module tries to establish the connection. If module B cannot be found on the air within a timeout, module A outputs a CMD_CONNECT_IND with "failed" as status. Otherwise, as soon as the physical connection has been set up successfully, module A and B output a CMD_CONNECT_IND message with the status of the successful connection and *LED_1* turns on.

Next some security and authentication messages will follow, like CMD_SECURITY_IND, if security is enabled.

After the physical connection has been setup successfully the modules exchange their services (WE SPP-like). As soon as this has finished successfully, a CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP message is sent to the host indicating that the connection is ready for data transmission. In addition, *LED_2* turns on.

Now, data can be transmitted in both directions using the command CMD_DATA_REQ. It is confirmed by the messages CMD_DATA_CNF (data will be processed) and CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP (data transmitted successfully).

Each time data has been received a CMD_DATA_IND message will be output containing the received data.

As soon as one module closes the connection using a `CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ`, both devices will inform their host by a `CMD_DISCONNECT_IND` message that the connection is no longer open. If a device is no longer within range, the `CMD_DISCONNECT_IND` message is triggered by a timeout.

An example of setting up an unsecured connection is shown in chapter 6.4. How to setup a secured connection is shown in the preceding chapters. See also the application note "ANR009 advanced developer guide" to get detailed information about the connection setup with foreign devices.

7.6.1. Further information for a secure connection setup

The `RF_SecFlags` parameter of the module determines the security mode. If a certain security mode of a Proteus-III peripheral device is set, its security level has to be met by the connecting central device to be able to exchange data. As long as the defined security level is not met by the central device, no access to the peripheral's profiles will be granted.



When connecting from a Proteus-III to another Proteus radio module, you shall not use different security modes.



To get further information about the secured connection setup, when using a foreign device (i.e. mobile phone with a custom APP), please refer to the Proteus-III application note "ANR009 advanced developer guide".

7.6.1.1. Just works mode

In case of the "Just works" mode, each time a connection is established, a new random key is exchanged in advance to be used for data encryption. Since no authentication will be performed, also devices without input and output capabilities (like keyboard or display) are able to connect to each other.

Example: Secured connection with LE Legacy security method "Just Works" without bonding

1. Power-up the modules and make their UARTs accessible by the host(s) (115200 Baud, 8n1). After the power-up or after reset the following sequence is sent from the module to the host.

Info	Module A	Module B
← Response <code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code> : Module A started in <code>ACTION_IDLE</code> mode.	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	

⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module B started in ACTION_IDLE mode.		02 41 02 00 01 01 41
--	--	----------------------

2. Request the FS_BTMAC of both modules.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4	02 10 01 00 04 17	
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module A is 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 50 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C2	
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4		02 10 01 00 04 17
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module B is 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 50 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 86

3. Configure the parameter RF_SecFlags to use "Just Works" pairing method for Bluetooth® security.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x02 on module A	02 11 02 00 0C 02 1F	
⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)	02 51 01 00 00 52	
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x02 on module B		02 11 02 00 0C 02 1F
⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)		02 51 01 00 00 52
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

4. Connect module A to module B via Bluetooth®.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
⇐ Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14

← Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 88 07 00 02 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5C	
← Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 88 07 00 02 55 00 00 DA 18 00 18

Info	Module A	Module B
← Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 EC	
← Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A8

5. Once the connection is active, data can be sent in each direction. Let us send a string "ABCD" from module B to module A.



The RSSI values will be different in your tests.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "ABCD" to module A		02 04 04 00 41 42 43 44 06
← Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now		02 44 01 00 00 47
← Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "ABCD" from FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xCA (-54 dBm)	02 84 0B 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 CA 41 42 43 44 90	
← Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully		02 C4 01 00 00 C7

6. Reply with "EFGH" to module B.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "EFGH" to module B	02 04 04 00 45 46 47 48 0E	

⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now	02 44 01 00 00 47	
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "EFGH" from FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xC1 (-63dBm)		02 84 0B 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C1 45 46 47 48 D7
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully	02 C4 01 00 00 C7	

7. Now module A closes the connection, so both modules will get a disconnect indication.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ: Disconnect	02 07 00 00 05	
⇐ Response CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF: Request received, disconnect now	02 47 01 00 00 44	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed	02 87 01 00 16 92	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed		02 87 01 00 13 97

8. You may want to perform a CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ to restore default settings.

7.6.1.2. StaticPasskey mode

In case of the "StaticPasskey" mode, a pass key has to be entered at the central side that has to match the pass key of the peripheral. Here the Proteus-III uses a static pass key in the peripheral role that is stored in the parameter RF_StaticPasskey. When using this method, the central device requests its host to enter the correct pass key (see CMD_PASSKEY_IND). In this case the pass key of the peripheral has to be entered on central side using the CMD_PASSKEY_REQ command. If the entered pass key is correct, the channel will be opened for data transmission. Otherwise, the connection will be rejected.

Example: Secured connection with security method "StaticPasskey"

1. Power-up the modules and make their UARTs accessible by the host(s) (115200 Baud, 8n1). After the power-up or after reset the following sequence is sent from the module to the host.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module A started in ACTION_IDLE mode.	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module B started in ACTION_IDLE mode.		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

2. Request the FS_BTMAC of both modules.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4	02 10 01 00 04 17	
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module A is 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 50 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C2	
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4		02 10 01 00 04 17
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module B is 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 50 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 86

3. Configure the parameter RF_SecFlags to use "StaticPasskey" pairing method for Bluetooth® security.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x03 on module A	02 11 02 00 0C 03 1E	
⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)	02 51 01 00 00 52	
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x03 on module B		02 11 02 00 0C 03 1E
⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)		02 51 01 00 00 52
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

4. Connect module A to module B via Bluetooth®.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
⇐ Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14
⇐ Indication CMD_PASSKEY_IND to ask for the pass key	02 8D 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5B	
⇒ Answer with the CMD_PASSKEY_REQ and the pass key "123123"	02 0D 06 00 31 32 33 31 32 33 09	

« Response CMD_PASSKEY_CNF: Pass key ok	02 4D 01 00 00 4E	
« Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 88 07 00 02 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5C	
« Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 88 07 00 02 55 00 00 DA 18 00 18
« Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 EC	
« Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A8

5. Once the connection is active, data can be sent in each direction. Let us send a string "ABCD" from module B to module A.



The RSSI values will be different in your tests.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "ABCD" to module A		02 04 04 00 41 42 43 44 06
« Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now		02 44 01 00 00 47
« Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "ABCD" from FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xCA (-54 dBm)	02 84 0B 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 CA 41 42 43 44 90	
« Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully		02 C4 01 00 00 C7

6. Reply with "EFGH" to module B.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "EFGH" to module B	02 04 04 00 45 46 47 48 0E	
« Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now	02 44 01 00 00 47	

← Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "EFGH" from FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xC1 (-63dBm)		02 84 0B 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C1 45 46 47 48 D7
← Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully	02 C4 01 00 00 C7	

7. Now module A closes the connection, so both modules will get a disconnect indication.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ: Disconnect	02 07 00 00 05	
← Response CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF: Request received, disconnect now	02 47 01 00 00 44	
← Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed	02 87 01 00 16 92	
← Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed		02 87 01 00 13 97

8. You may want to perform a CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ to restore default settings.

7.6.1.3. LescPasskey mode

In case of the "LescPasskey" mode, a pass key has to be entered at the central side that has to match the pass key of the peripheral. Here the Proteus-III uses a pass key in the peripheral role that is generated by the LESC method (low energy secure connection) when a connection is initiated. When using this method, the peripheral device outputs the new generated pass key (see CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND) when a connection setup has been initiated. At the same time the central device requests its host to enter this pass key (see CMD_PASSKEY_IND). In this case the pass key of the peripheral has to be entered on central side using the CMD_PASSKEY_REQ command. If the entered pass key is correct, the channel will be opened for data transmission. Otherwise, the connection will be rejected.

Example: Secured connection with security method "LescPasskey"

1. Power-up the modules and make their UARTs accessible by the host(s) (115200 Baud, 8n1). After the power-up or after reset the following sequence is sent from the module to the host.

Info	Module A	Module B
← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module A started in ACTION_IDLE mode.	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module B started in ACTION_IDLE mode.		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

2. Request the FS_BTMAC of both modules.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4	02 10 01 00 04 17	
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module A is 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 50 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C2	
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4		02 10 01 00 04 17
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module B is 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 50 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 86

3. Configure the parameter RF_SecFlags to use "LescPasskey" pairing method for Bluetooth® security.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x05 on module A	02 11 02 00 0C 05 18	
⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)	02 51 01 00 00 52	
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x05 on module B		02 11 02 00 0C 05 18
⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)		02 51 01 00 00 52
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

4. Connect module A to module B via Bluetooth®.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
⇐ Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14
⇐ Indication CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND to display the new generated pass key "429943"		02 A4 0D 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 34 32 39 39 34 33 3D
⇐ Indication CMD_PASSKEY_IND to ask for the pass key	02 8D 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5B	

⇒ Answer with the CMD_PASSKEY_REQ and the pass key "429943"	02 0D 06 00 34 32 39 39 34 33 08	
⇐ Response CMD_PASSKEY_CNF: Pass key ok	02 4D 01 00 00 4E	
⇐ Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 88 07 00 02 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5C	
⇐ Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 88 07 00 02 55 00 00 DA 18 00 18

Info	Module A	Module B
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 EC	
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A8

5. Once the connection is active, data can be sent in each direction. Let us send a string "ABCD" from module B to module A.



The RSSI values will be different in your tests.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "ABCD" to module A		02 04 04 00 41 42 43 44 06
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now		02 44 01 00 00 47
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "ABCD" from FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xCA (-54 dBm)	02 84 0B 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 CA 41 42 43 44 90	
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully		02 C4 01 00 00 C7

6. Reply with "EFGH" to module B.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "EFGH" to module B	02 04 04 00 45 46 47 48 0E	
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now	02 44 01 00 00 47	
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "EFGH" from FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xC1 (-63dBm)		02 84 0B 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C1 45 46 47 48 D7
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully	02 C4 01 00 00 C7	

7. Now module A closes the connection, so both modules will get a disconnect indication.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ: Disconnect	02 07 00 00 05	
⇐ Response CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF: Request received, disconnect now	02 47 01 00 00 44	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed	02 87 01 00 16 92	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed		02 87 01 00 13 97

8. You may want to perform a CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ to restore default settings.

7.6.1.4. LescNumComp mode

In case of the "LescNumComp" mode, a pass key is displayed on peripheral and central side. Both, the central and peripheral device must confirm that both keys are equal. Here the Proteus-III uses a pass key that is generated by the LESC method (low energy secure connection) when a connection is initiated. When using this method, the peripheral and central device output the new generated pass key (see CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND) when a connection setup has been initiated. Both, the central and peripheral device request their hosts to confirm that both keys coincide (see CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ). If both devices confirmed the key, the channel will be opened for data transmission. Otherwise, the connection will be rejected.

Example: Secured connection with security method "LescNumComp"

1. Power-up the modules and make their UARTs accessible by the host(s) (115200 Baud, 8n1). After the power-up or after reset the following sequence is sent from the module to the host.

Info	Module A	Module B

← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module A started in ACTION_IDLE mode.	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module B started in ACTION_IDLE mode.		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

2. Request the FS_BTMAC of both modules.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4	02 10 01 00 04 17	
← Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module A is 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 50 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C2	
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4		02 10 01 00 04 17
← Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module B is 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 50 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 86

3. Configure the parameter RF_SecFlags to use "LescPasskey" pairing method for Bluetooth® security.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x04 on module A	02 11 02 00 0C 04 19	
← Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)	02 51 01 00 00 52	
← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12 and value 0x04 on module B		02 11 02 00 0C 04 19
← Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)		02 51 01 00 00 52
← Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

4. Connect module A to module B via Bluetooth®.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
← Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
← Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	

← Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14
← Indication CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND to display the new generated pass key "234939"	02 A4 0D 00 01 11 00 00 DA 18 00 32 33 34 39 33 39 7F	
← Indication CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND to display the new generated pass key "234939"		02 A4 0D 00 01 55 00 00 DA 18 00 32 33 34 39 33 39 3B
⇒ Answer with the CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ to confirm that both keys are equal	02 24 01 00 00 27	
← Response CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_CNF: Request understood, going on with the connection setup process	02 64 01 00 00 67	
⇒ Answer with the CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ to confirm that both keys are equal		02 24 01 00 00 27
← Response CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_CNF: Request understood, going on with the connection setup process		02 64 01 00 00 67
← Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 88 07 00 02 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5C	
← Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x02 (encrypted link, pairing, no bonding), with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 88 07 00 02 55 00 00 DA 18 00 18
← Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 EC	
← Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A8

5. Once the connection is active, data can be sent in each direction. Let us send a string "ABCD" from module B to module A.



The RSSI values will be different in your tests.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "ABCD" to module A		02 04 04 00 41 42 43 44 06
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now		02 44 01 00 00 47
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "ABCD" from FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xCA (-54 dBm)	02 84 0B 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 CA 41 42 43 44 90	
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully		02 C4 01 00 00 C7

6. Reply with "EFGH" to module B.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "EFGH" to module B	02 04 04 00 45 46 47 48 0E	
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now	02 44 01 00 00 47	
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "EFGH" from FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xC1 (-63dBm)		02 84 0B 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C1 45 46 47 48 D7
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully	02 C4 01 00 00 C7	

7. Now module A closes the connection, so both modules will get a disconnect indication.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ: Disconnect	02 07 00 00 05	
⇐ Response CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF: Request received, disconnect now	02 47 01 00 00 44	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed	02 87 01 00 16 92	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed		02 87 01 00 13 97

8. You may want to perform a CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ to restore default settings.

7.6.1.5. Bonding

The SECFLAGS_BONDING_ENABLE flag in the RF_SecFlags user setting allows enabling the bonding feature. This feature stores the keys that are exchanged during the pairing phase in a connection setup. With this, subsequent connections to bonded devices can be established without renegotiation. Bonding data of up to 32 devices will be stored in the flash.

The commands `CMD_GETBONDS_REQ` and `CMD_DELETEBONDS_REQ` allow to display and remove certain or all entries of the list of bonded devices.

Example: Secured connection with LE Legacy security method "Just Works" using bonding

1. Power-up the modules and make their UARTs accessible by the host(s) (115200 Baud, 8n1). After the power-up or after reset the following sequence is sent from the module to the host.

Info	Module A	Module B
← Response <code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code> : Module A started in <code>ACTION_IDLE</code> mode.	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
← Response <code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code> : Module B started in <code>ACTION_IDLE</code> mode.		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

2. Request the `FS_BTMAC` of both modules.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request <code>CMD_GET_REQ</code> with settings index 4	02 10 01 00 04 17	
← Response <code>CMD_GET_CNF</code> : <code>FS_BTMAC</code> of module A is 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 50 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C2	
⇒ Request <code>CMD_GET_REQ</code> with settings index 4		02 10 01 00 04 17
← Response <code>CMD_GET_CNF</code> : <code>FS_BTMAC</code> of module B is 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 50 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 86

3. Configure the parameter `RF_SecFlags` to use "Just Works with bonding" pairing method for Bluetooth® security.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Perform <code>CMD_SET_REQ</code> with settings index 12 and value 0xA (Just works with <code>SECFLAGS_BONDING_ENABLE</code> flag set) on module A	02 11 02 00 0C 0A 17	
← Response <code>CMD_SET_CNF</code> (Module will restart to adopt the new value)	02 51 01 00 00 52	
← Response <code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code>	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇒ Perform <code>CMD_SET_REQ</code> with settings index 12 and value 0xA (Just works with <code>SECFLAGS_BONDING_ENABLE</code> flag set) on module B		02 11 02 00 0C 0A 17
← Response <code>CMD_SET_CNF</code> (Module will restart to adopt the new value)		02 51 01 00 00 52

⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF		02 41 02 00 01 01 41
-----------------------------	--	----------------------

4. Connect module A to module B via Bluetooth®.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
⇐ Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14
⇐ Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x01 (encrypted link, bonding established), with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 88 07 00 01 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5F	
⇐ Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x01 (encrypted link, bonding established), with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 88 07 00 01 55 00 00 DA 18 00 1B
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 EC	
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A8

5. Now module A closes the connection, so both modules will get a disconnect indication.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ: Disconnect	02 07 00 00 05	
⇐ Response CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF: Request received, disconnect now	02 47 01 00 00 44	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed	02 87 01 00 16 92	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed		02 87 01 00 13 97

6. Connect module A to module B a second time. Now, since both devices have been bonded before, the exchanged keys are reused.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
⇐ Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14
⇐ Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x00 (encrypted link to bonded device), with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 88 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 5E	
⇐ Indication CMD_SECURITY_IND, status 0x00 (encrypted link to bonded device), with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 88 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 1A
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 EC	
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A8

7. You may want to perform a CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ to restore default settings.

7.7. Unidirectional connectionless data transmission using Beacons

Besides the connection-based type of data transmission described in the previous section, there exists a second method that uses so called Beacons. In this case, up to 19 bytes of user data can be placed in the Bluetooth® LE scan response packet, which is broadcasted frequently without acknowledgement and without security during advertising.

If a Proteus-III is supposed to broadcast some user data the command `CMD_SETBEACON_REQ` places the payload data, that is marked as "manufacturer data" combined with the Würth Elektronik eiSos company identifier 0x031A, in the scan response packet (see also application note ANR026).

If a second Proteus-III, which has its Beacon-function enabled (see `RF_BeaconFlags`), is in the operating state `ACTION_SCANNING`, the scan response packet and the containing beacon data is received. Filtering the beacon messages can be enabled or disabled using the user setting `RF_BeaconFlags`.

After the reception of the beacon data, it is output to the connected host using a `CMD_BEACON_IND` message.

To set the module into `ACTION_SCANNING` mode the command `CMD_SCANSTART_REQ` has to be used. Enable the Beacon-function before by setting the corresponding value in the `RF_BeaconFlags` parameter.

This method is very suitable for sensor networks, which frequently send their data to data collectors. Especially when using a slow `RF_ScanTiming` mode, data can be transmitted in very energy efficient way. Please check the settings `RF_AdvertisingTimeout` and the advertising interval in `RF_ScanTiming` to configure the frequency and interval of transmissions which will have an influence on the current consumption of the module.



Please note that the transmission and reception of Beacons are not supported, if `RF_AdvertisingFlags` is 2 or "Long range connection mode" bit is set in `CFG_Flags`.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇐ Reset both modules using <code>/RESET</code> pin, <code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code>	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	02 41 02 00 01 01 41
⇒ Configure <code>RF_BeaconFlags</code> using <code>CMD_SET_REQ</code> to "beacon rx enabled, no filter"		02 11 02 00 0E 01 1E
⇐ <code>CMD_SET_CNF</code> from module B		02 51 01 00 00 52
⇐ Module B reset such that the change in the user setting takes effect (<code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code>)		02 41 02 00 01 01 41
⇒ Activate scanning on module B		02 09 00 00 0B
⇐ Response <code>CMD_SCANSTART_CNF</code>		02 49 01 00 00 4A
⇒ <code>CMD_SETBEACON_REQ</code> , content "Hallo"	02 0C 05 00 48 61 6C 6C 6F 4D	
⇐ <code>CMD_SETBEACON_CNF</code>	02 4C 01 00 00 4F	

⇐ Receiving multiple CMD_BEACON_IND		02 8C 0C 00 02 00 00 DA 18 00 B5 48 61 6C 6C 6F B1 02 8C 0C 00 02 00 00 DA 18 00 B1 48 61 6C 6C 6F B5
:	:	:
⇒ Deactivate scanning on module B, CMD_SCANSTOP_REQ		02 0A 00 00 08
⇐ Response CMD_SCANSTOP_CNF		02 4A 01 00 00 49
⇒ Reset module A (disable sending beacons), CMD_RESET_REQ	02 00 00 00 02	
⇐ Response CMD_RESET_CNF	02 40 01 00 00 43	
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	

7.8. Energy-efficient distance estimation solutions

The transmitted advertising packet contains its TX power value. This value in combination with the RSSI value of the received advertising packet can be used to estimate the distance between the modules. Using a suitable triangulation algorithm and multiple receivers or transmitters, a position can be approximately determined.

The advertising packets can be received by performing a passive scan that will not request the scan response. Thus only one frame, instead of three frames, is transmitted per advertising interval.

Besides the FS_BTMAC of the sending module, the RSSI value and the TX power is output in format of a CMD_RSSI_IND message when an advertising packet of another Proteus-III has been received.

To enable this function, the corresponding value in the user setting RF_BeaconFlags has to be set.

7.9. Configure the module for low power consumption

Depending on the application environment of the Proteus-III, the goal is to find the optimal trade-off between the module's performance and its power consumption. Therefore, the main settings and operation modes that affect the current consumption are listed below:

- **CMD_SLEEP_REQ:** This command puts the module into ACTION_SLEEP mode, where it consumes the lowest current (<1µA). In this case, both the UART and the Bluetooth® LE interface are shut down.
- **CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ:** This command disables the UART interface. It is enabled again as soon as the module is reset/woken or when the module outputs a message e.g. when a connection request has been received or the *WAKE_UP* pin of the module was used.
- **RF_TXPower:** This setting can be used to configure the output power of the module. Reducing the output power saves energy.

- RF_ScanTiming and RF_ScanFactor: These settings define the timing behavior of the module, when advertising or scanning. The less often the module sends advertising packets or scans, the less current is consumed.
- RF_ConnectionTiming: This setting defines the timing behavior of the module during connection setup and during an open connection. The less often the connected modules communicate with each other, the less current is consumed.
- The on-board nRF52 SoC is running in debug mode. This will not occur if the pins are connected as described in this manual.
- The 2 MBit radio modes transmits data packets faster. Using it reduces the current consumption slightly.



For optimal energy efficiency a user and application specific firmware may be required.

7.10. Start the direct test mode (DTM)

The direct test mode (DTM) enables the test functions described in Bluetooth® Specification. The purpose of DTM is to test the operation of the radio at the physical level, such as transmission power and receiver sensitivity, frequency offset and drift, modulation characteristics, packet error rate and inter modulation performance.

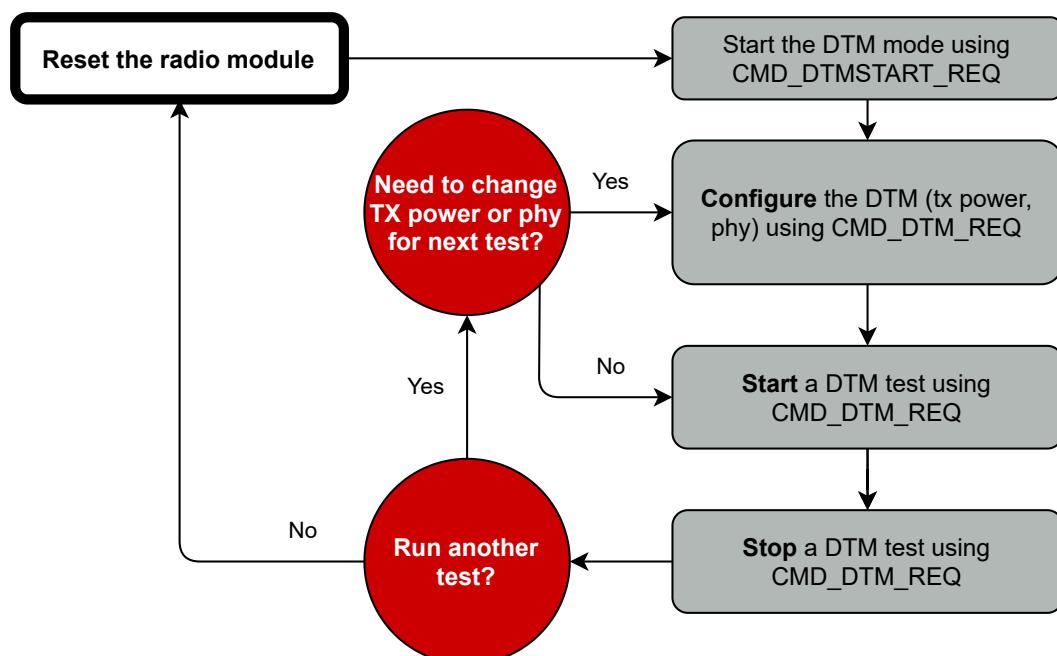


Figure 9: DTM flow chart

Conformance tests of the nRF52 with the DTM application are carried out by dedicated test equipment. To get access to the test functions the `CMD_DTMSTART_REQ`¹ shall be used first. This command restarts the module in direct test mode. A `CMD_GETSTATE_CNF` message confirms that the DTM has been started successfully.

Now the `CMD_DTM_REQ` can be used to configure output power and phy of the subsequent tests. Next, to start and stop the test functions, please use again the `CMD_DTM_REQ` command. After a test has been started, it has to be stopped before a next test can be run.

Example: Transmission test on channel 0 with Bit pattern 0x0F

The goal of this example is to show how the DTM, and in specific the transmission/reception test, can be run. Here fore we need to connect two modules, start the transmission test on one module and start the reception test on the second module. In this section, all packet data from or to the modules is given in **hexadecimal notation**.

All steps are described in the following:

- First, restart the modules in DTM mode.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request <code>CMD_DTMSTART_REQ</code> to enable the DTM on module A	02 1D 00 00 1F	
⇐ Response <code>CMD_DTMSTART_CNF</code> : Request understood, try to start DTM now	02 5D 01 00 00 5E	
⇐ Indication <code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code> : Restarted module with DTM enabled	02 41 02 00 10 05 54	
⇒ Request <code>CMD_DTMSTART_REQ</code> to enable the DTM on module B		02 1D 00 00 1F
⇐ Response <code>CMD_DTMSTART_CNF</code> : Request understood, try to start DTM now		02 5D 01 00 00 5E
⇐ Indication <code>CMD_GETSTATE_CNF</code> : Restarted module with DTM enabled		02 41 02 00 10 05 54

- Now both modules are ready for the DTM configuration and operation.
- (Optional) Set both modules to 2 MBit mode (default setting after start-up is 1 MBit).

¹Please note that the WE UART Terminal [4] PC tool in version 1.3.1.0 or newer supports the DTM function.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to set module A to 2 MBit mode	02 1E 04 00 00 02 02 00 18	
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Success	02 5E 03 00 00 00 00 5F	
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to set module B to 2 MBit mode		02 1E 04 00 00 02 02 00 18
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Success		02 5E 03 00 00 00 00 5F

- (Optional) Set the output power to 4 dBm (default setting after start-up is 8 dBm).

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to set module A to 8 dBm output power	02 1E 04 00 02 04 02 03 1F	
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Success	02 5E 03 00 00 00 00 5F	
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to set module B to 8 dBm output power		02 1E 04 00 02 04 02 03 1F
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Success		02 5E 03 00 00 00 00 5F

- After configuration the tests can start. First start the transmission test.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to start the transmission test on module A with channel 0 and Bit pattern 16 times 0x0F	02 1E 04 00 02 00 10 01 0B	
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Started test successfully	02 5E 03 00 00 00 00 5F	

- Start the reception test.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to start the reception test on module B with channel 0		02 1E 04 00 01 00 00 00 19
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Started test successfully		02 5E 03 00 00 00 00 5F

- Stop both tests again.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to stop the transmission test	02 1E 04 00 03 00 00 01 1A	
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Stopped test successfully	02 5E 03 00 00 80 00 DF	
⇒ Request CMD_DTM_REQ to stop the reception test		02 1E 04 00 03 00 00 01 1A
⇐ Response CMD_DTM_CNF: Stopped test successfully, received 0x14FE (5374 _{dec}) packets		02 5E 03 00 00 94 FE 35

During the time the reception and transmission tests were running 5374 data packets have been received by module B, which were transmitted by module A.

7.11. Using the 2 MBit and LE Coded phy

Bluetooth® 5 allows to transmit data with 2 MBit data rate as well as in LE Coded mode. The LE Coded mode is the so called "Long range mode" that has been invented with Bluetooth® 5.0. It uses the Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum (DSSS) technique that spreads the signal and thus generates redundant informations. On the receiver side, it uses the Forward Error Correction (FEC) technique to use the redundancy to correct a received perturbed signal. The combination of both, the DSSS and FEC, enable higher ranges in data transmission.

To be backward compatible to Bluetooth® LE 4.x devices, Bluetooth® LE connections must still be setup using the 1 MBit phy. As soon as a connection has been setup, the connection can be updated to the 2 MBit or LE Coded mode. To switch the phy after the connection has been setup the Proteus-III offers the command CMD_PHYUPDATE_REQ. As response to this request a CMD_PHYUPDATE_IND is returned from the Proteus-III, that gives feedback if the connection was switched to the new phy, or if the connection partner rejected the request.



Please note that the 2 MBit and LE Coded phy is an optional feature of Bluetooth® 5 and newer devices and therefore must not be supported.

7.12. Connection setup using LE Coded phy

Due to backward compatibility reasons the Bluetooth® LE standard expects to setup a Bluetooth® connection in the 1 MBit legacy mode and then to update the connection to long range mode, if requested. Thus, at connection setup time the distance between the two Bluetooth® LE devices must be within the standard range.

To avoid this situation, the Proteus-III allows to setup a connection directly in long range mode. To enable this feature, set the corresponding bit in the user setting CFG_Flags.

As soon as this feature is enabled, the Proteus-III sends only advertising packets in long range mode. Furthermore, when scanning, only advertising packets in long range mode are received. Thus only devices using this special mode can be found on the radio.



The Proteus-III advertises and scans in long range mode and thus is radio incompatible to Bluetooth® LE devices acting in legacy 1 Mbit mode. Using this feature, all Bluetooth® LE enabled devices, like smart phones, do not find the Proteus-III on radio as they are scanning in legacy 1 Mbit mode, by default.

Example: Configure the device for long range connection setup

The goal of this example is to demonstrate how to configure two Proteus-III radio module to be able to setup connections in long range mode. Further, a connection setup and data transmission is shown.

1. Power-up the modules and make their UARTs accessible by the host(s) (115200 Baud, 8n1). After the power-up or after reset the following sequence is sent from the module to the host.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module A started in ACTION_IDLE mode.	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF: Module B started in ACTION_IDLE mode.		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

2. Request the FS_BTMAC of both modules.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4	02 10 01 00 04 17	
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module A is 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 50 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C2	
⇒ Request CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 4		02 10 01 00 04 17
⇐ Response CMD_GET_CNF: FS_BTMAC of module B is 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 50 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 86

3. Configure the parameter CFG_Flags to use "Long range connection mode".

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 28 and value 0x02 (Long range connection mode) on module A	02 11 03 00 1C 02 00 0E	
⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)	02 51 01 00 00 52	
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF	02 41 02 00 01 01 41	
⇒ Perform CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 28 and value 0x02 (Long range connection mode) on module B		02 11 03 00 1C 02 00 0E

⇐ Response CMD_SET_CNF (Module will restart to adopt the new value)		02 51 01 00 00 52
⇐ Response CMD_GETSTATE_CNF		02 41 02 00 01 01 41

4. Connect module A to module B via Bluetooth®.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_CONNECT_REQ with FS_BTMAC of module B	02 06 06 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 D1	
⇐ Response CMD_CONNECT_CNF: Request understood, try to connect now	02 46 01 00 00 45	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	02 86 07 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 50	
⇐ Indication CMD_CONNECT_IND: Physical connection established successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00		02 86 07 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 14
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet	02 C6 08 00 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 EC	
⇐ Indication CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP: Channel opened successfully to module with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and maximum payload size of 0xF3 (243 Bytes) per packet		02 C6 08 00 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 F3 A8

5. Once the connection is active, data can be sent in each direction. Let us send a string "ABCD" from module B to module A.



The RSSI values will be different in your tests.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "ABCD" to module A		02 04 04 00 41 42 43 44 06
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now		02 44 01 00 00 47
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "ABCD" from FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xCA (-54 dBm)	02 84 0B 00 11 00 00 DA 18 00 CA 41 42 43 44 90	

⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully		02 C4 01 00 00 C7
--	--	-------------------

6. Reply with "EFGH" to module B.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DATA_REQ: Send "EFGH" to module B	02 04 04 00 45 46 47 48 0E	
⇐ Response CMD_DATA_CNF: Request received, send data now	02 44 01 00 00 47	
⇐ Indication CMD_DATA_IND: Received string "EFGH" from FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 with RSSI of 0xC1 (-63dBm)		02 84 0B 00 55 00 00 DA 18 00 C1 45 46 47 48 D7
⇐ Response CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP: Data transmitted successfully	02 C4 01 00 00 C7	

7. Now module A closes the connection, so both modules will get a disconnect indication.

Info	Module A	Module B
⇒ Request CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ: Disconnect	02 07 00 00 05	
⇐ Response CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF: Request received, disconnect now	02 47 01 00 00 44	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed	02 87 01 00 16 92	
⇐ Indication CMD_DISCONNECT_IND: Connection closed		02 87 01 00 13 97

8. You may want to perform a CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ to restore default settings.

7.13. Radio compatibility to other Proteus devices

The Proteus-III uses the same radio settings as Proteus-I and -II, and is therefore fully compatible on the radio.

Only Proteus-e has a different format of the advertising packets, which forces the Proteus-III to use special scanner settings to be able to scan for Proteus-e radio modules. Before running the scan on Proteus-III, first configure the following settings:

- RF_AdvertisingFlags to 0x02 (format 2)
- RF_ScanFlags to 0x01 (active scan enabled)

8. Host connection

8.1. Serial interface: UART

The configuration in factory state of the UART is 115200 Baud without flow control and with data format of 8 data Bits, no parity and 1 stop Bit ("8n1"). The baud rate and flow control of the UART can be configured by means of the user setting `UART_ConfigIndex`. The data format is fixed to 8n1.

The output of characters on the serial interface runs with secondary priority. For this reason, short interruptions may occur between the outputs of individual successive Bytes. The host must not implement too strict timeouts between two Bytes to be able to receive packets that have interruptions in between.

8.1.1. Reset behaviour

When holding the module's `/RESET` pin LOW, the radio chip states are undefined. In this case the modules `UTXD` pin may be pulled LOW by the radio module, such that the connected host controller's UART may detect a 0x00-byte with frame error.

To guarantee a clean UART communication, the host controller may not accept bytes with frame errors and flush its RX buffer, after pulling the module's `/RESET` pin LOW.

9. The command interface

The module acts as a slave and can be fully controlled by an external host. The configuration as well as the operation of the module can be managed by predefined commands that are sent as telegrams over the UART interface of the module.

The commands of the command interface can be divided into 3 groups:

- Requests: The host requests the module to trigger any action, e.g. in case of the request `CMD_RESET_REQ` the host asks the module to perform a reset.
- Confirmations: On each request, the module answers with a confirmation message to give a feedback on the requested operation status. In case of a `CMD_RESET_REQ`, the module answers with a `CMD_RESET_CNF` to tell the host whether the reset will be performed or not.
- Indications and Responses: The module indicates spontaneously when a special event has occurred. The `CMD_CONNECT_IND` indicates for example that a connection has been established.

Start signal	Command	Length	Payload	CS
0x02	1 Byte	2 Byte, LSB first	Length Bytes	1 Byte

Start signal: 0x02 (1 Byte)

Command: One of the predefined commands (1 Byte).

Length: Specifies the length of the payload that follows. Length is a 16 Bit field with LSB first.

Payload: Variable number of data or parameters (defined by the length field).

Checksum: Byte wise XOR combination of all preceding Bytes including the start signal, i.e.
 $0x02 \text{ } ^ \text{ } \text{Command} \text{ } ^ \text{ } \text{Length} \text{ } ^ \text{ } \text{Payload} = \text{CS}$



Host integration example codes for checksum calculation and command frame structure can be found in annex A and B, as well as in the *Wireless Connectivity SDK*.



If the transmission of the UART command has not finished within the packet transmission duration (depending on the currently selected UART Baud rate + 5ms after having received the start signal), the module discards the received Bytes and waits for a new command. This means that the delay between 2 successive Bytes in a frame must be kept as low as possible.



Please note that the different commands are only valid in specific module states (see Figure 8). If a command is not permitted in the current state, the command confirmation returns "Operation not permitted" as a response.

9.1. Scan for other modules in range

9.1.1. CMD_SCANSTART_REQ

This command starts the scan operation to find other Proteus-III in range. All found devices that fit the Proteus-III specification (i.e. devices that support WE SPP-like service UUID) are saved in an internal data base. Before outputting the data base content using the command CMD_GETDEVICES_REQ, the scan has to be stopped using CMD_SCANSTOP_REQ.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x09	0x00 0x00	0x0B

Response (CMD_SCANSTART_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x49	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will start scan now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.1.2. CMD_SCANSTOP_REQ

This command stops the scan operation that was started using CMD_SCANSTART_REQ. It stores the detected Proteus-III FS_BTMAC addresses in an internal database, which can be output using the CMD_GETDEVICES_REQ.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x0A	0x00 0x00	0x08

Response (CMD_SCANSTOP_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x4A	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will stop scan now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.1.3. CMD_GETDEVICES_REQ

This command returns the information about the devices found during the last scan operation. #Devices determines the number of devices that have been detected. The corresponding information will be output one after the other in the field behind #Devices in the CMD_GETDEVICES_CNF response. The RSSI and TXPower values are transmitted in the two's complement notation.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x0B	0x00 0x00	0x09

Response (CMD_GETDEVICES_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	#Devices	Payload	CS
0x02	0x4B	2 Bytes	1 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 2) Bytes	1 Byte

The Payload sequentially lists the data of the detected #Devices devices. It consists of #Devices times the following telegram (see example below).

BTMAC	RSSI	TXPower	Device name length	Device name
6 Bytes	1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	Device name length Bytes

Status:

0x00: Request received

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted



If there are too many devices found to be output, the response of the CMD_GETDEVICES_REQ is split into several CMD_GETDEVICES_CNF messages.



The detected device name is the content of the device name field of the received advertising packet. Thus, in case of the "Complete Local Name" is too long to fit into the device name field of the advertising packet, this could be the "Shortened Local Name" of the device.



If RSSI = 0x80, there is no value available.



If TXPower = 0x80, there is no value available.



If Device name length = 0, then there is no device name available.

9.1.3.1. Example 1

Request for the FS_BTMAC of the devices found during the last scan.

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x0B	0x00 0x00	0x09

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	#Devices	Payload	CS
0x02	0x4B	0x1E 0x00	0x00	0x02	0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 0xE2 0x04 0x05 0x4D 0x4F 0x44 0x20 0x31 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 0xE5 0x00 0x05 0x4D 0x4F 0x44 0x20 0x32	0x11

During the last scan two devices have been detected:

- Device 1 with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00, RSSI value of 0xE2 (-30 dBm), TXPower of 0x04 (=+4 dBm) and device name of length 5 with the value of 0x4D4F442031 ("MOD 1").
- Device 2 with FS_BTMAC 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 and RSSI value of 0xE5 (-27 dBm), TXPower of 0x00 (0 dBm) and device name 0x4D4F442032 ("MOD 2") of length 5.

9.1.4. CMD_RSSI_IND

This telegram indicates the reception of an advertising packet sent by another Proteus-III module. It can be used to realize a position sensing application. This data can only be received, when the module is in ACTION_SCANNING mode (passive scan is sufficient) and the corresponding value in the RF_BeaconFlags is set.

Besides the FS_BTMAC, the RSSI value of the advertising packet and the transmission power of

the sending device are output. Both, the RSSI value and the TX power are in two's complement notation.

The accuracy is ± 2 dB when inside the RSSI range of -90 to -20 dBm.

The value of the parameter TX power is read from the content of the received advertise packet.
Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	BTMAC	RSSI	TX Power	CS
0x02	0x8B	2 Bytes	6 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte

9.1.5. CMD_BEACON_RSP

This telegram indicates the reception of an advertising packet. This data can only be received, when the module is in ACTION_SCANNING mode and the corresponding value in the RF_BeaconFlags is set. If active scanning is enabled by setting the RF_ScanFlags, received scan response packets are output in addition.

Besides the FS_BTMAC, the RSSI value of the advertising packet and the raw data is output.

The accuracy is ± 2 dB when inside the RSSI range of -90 to -20 dBm.



The format of the raw advertising data is described in the Bluetooth® specification version 5.1 | Vol 3, Part C, section "Advertising and scan response data format".

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	BTMAC	RSSI	Raw advertising data	CS
0x02	0xCC	2 Bytes	6 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 7) Bytes	1 Byte

9.2. Setup connections

9.2.1. CMD_CONNECT_REQ

This command tries to setup a connection to the Proteus-III, which is identified by the FS_BTMAC used in the command. After the module prints a CMD_CONNECT_CNF to confirm that the request was received, the indication message CMD_CONNECT_IND follows which determines whether the connection request was accepted by the other device.

In case of enabled security features (see the setting RF_SecFlags) a CMD_SECURITY_IND is output in addition.

As soon as the connection setup has been completed and all services have been discovered successfully a CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP is sent to the host. Now data may be sent using the CMD_DATA_REQ.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	BTMAC	CS
0x02	0x06	0x06 0x00	6 Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_CONNECT_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x46	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, try to connect to the device with the FS_BTMAC

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.2.2. CMD_CONNECT_IND

This telegram indicates the connection status and, in case of success, the FS_BTMAC of the connected device. This indication message is the result of a connection request (CMD_CONNECT_REQ).

Format (connected successfully):

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	BTMAC	CS
0x02	0x86	0x07 0x00	0x00	6 Bytes	1 Byte

Format (failed to connect):

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x86	0x01 0x00	0x01	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Physical connection established successfully

0x01: Connection failed, e.g. due to a timeout (as defined by RF_ScanTiming)

9.2.3. CMD_SECURITY_IND

This telegram indicates the security status and the FS_BTMAC of the connected device. This indication message is the result of a connection request (CMD_CONNECT_REQ).

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	BTMAC	CS
0x02	0x88	0x07 0x00	1 Byte	6 Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Encrypted link to previously bonded device established

0x01: Bonding successful, encrypted link established

0x02: No bonding, pairing successful, encrypted link established

9.2.4. CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP

This command is sent to the host as soon as connection setup and service discovery has been completed successfully. Now data can be transmitted using the CMD_DATA_REQ. Next to the FS_BTMAC of the connected device, the maximum payload size that is supported by the link is part of this telegram. This indication message is the result of a connection request (CMD_CONNECT_REQ).

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	BTMAC	Max payload	CS
0x02	0xC6	0x08 0x00	1 Byte	6 Bytes	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Success

9.2.5. CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ

This command shuts down the existing connection. Thereafter the module prints a CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF to confirm that the request has been received, the indication message CMD_DISCONNECT_IND follows which determines whether the disconnection operation has been performed successfully or not.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x07	0x00 0x00	0x05

Response (CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x47	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, try to disconnect

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.2.6. CMD_DISCONNECT_IND

This telegram indicates that the connection has shut down successfully. This indication message is the result of a disconnection request (CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ).

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Reason	CS
0x02	0x87	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Reason:

0x08: Connection timeout

0x13: User terminated connection

0x16: Host terminated connection

0x3B: Connection interval unacceptable

0x3D: Connection terminated due to MIC failure (Not able to connect due to bad link quality, or connection request ignored due to wrong key)

0x3E: Connection setup failed

9.2.7. CMD_PHYUPDATE_REQ

This command allows to update the PHY of the current Bluetooth® LE connection. After the module prints a CMD_PHYUPDATE_CNF it tries to update the PHY. The result is indicated by CMD_PHYUPDATE_IND message.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	PHY	CS
0x02	0x1A	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

PHY:

0x01: 1 MBit PHY

0x02: 2 MBit PHY

0x04: LE Coded mode (1 MBit PHY with DSSS and FEC for higher ranges)

Response (CMD_PHYUPDATE_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x5A	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received. Try to update PHY of current connection

0x01: Operation failed, e.g. due to invalid PHY

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.2.8. CMD_PHYUPDATE_IND

This command indicates that there was an attempt to update the PHY of the existing connection. If the PHY update was successful, the command includes the new PHY for receiving and transmitting direction, as well as the BTMAC of the device connected to. This command is the result of the CMD_PHYUPDATE_REQ.

Format in case of success:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	PHY Rx	PHY Tx	BTMAC	CS
0x02	0x9A	0x09 0x00	0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte	6 Bytes	1 Byte

PHY Rx/PHY Tx:

0x01: Using 1 MBit PHY now

0x02: Using 2 MBit PHY now

0x04: Using LE Coded mode (1 MBit PHY with DSSS and FEC for higher ranges) now

Format in case of failure:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	Info	CS
0x02	0x9A	0x02 0x00	0x01	1 Byte	1 Byte

Info:

0x1A: Unsupported feature of remote device

9.2.9. CMD_PASSKEY_REQ

When receiving a CMD_PASSKEY_IND during connection setup, the peripheral requests for a pass key to authenticate the connecting device. To answer this request the CMD_PASSKEY_REQ message has to be sent to the Proteus-III central including the passkey of the peripheral. The permissible characters of the passkey are ranging from 0x30 to 0x39 (both included) which are ASCII numbers (0-9).

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Pass key	CS
0x02	0x0D	0x06 0x00	6 Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_PASSKEY_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x4D	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Pass key accepted and pass key request answered

0x01: Operation failed, due to invalid pass key

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.2.10. CMD_PASSKEY_IND

Depending on the security settings of the peripheral, a passkey has to be entered on the central side to authenticate the central device. When such a pass key authentication request is received on the central side this CMD_PASSKEY_IND message is sent to the host. In this case, the passkey has to be entered using the CMD_PASSKEY_REQ to successfully finish the connection procedure.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	BTMAC	CS
0x02	0x8D	0x07 0x00	1 Byte	6 Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Success

9.2.11. CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND

Depending on the security settings of the peripheral, a passkey is displayed to show it to the connection partner or to confirm/reject it.

In case of the "LescPasskey" mode, the peripheral outputs the pass key using this message to enter it on the central side for authentication.

In case of the "LescNumComp" mode, the central and peripheral output the passkey to their host. Both hosts must reply with a CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ message to confirm that both keys coincide.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Action	BTMAC	Pass key	CS
0x02	0xA4	0x0D 0x00	1 Byte	6 Bytes	6 Bytes	1 Byte

Action:

0x00: Key is displayed to enter it on the central device, no action needed in this device

0x01: Key is displayed, please confirm/reject it using a CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ

9.2.12. CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ

Depending on the security settings of the peripheral, a passkey is displayed to confirm or reject it.

In case of the "LescNumComp" mode, the central and peripheral output the passkey to their host. Both hosts must reply with a CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ message to confirm that both keys coincide.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x24	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: The keys displayed on the central and peripheral device coincide, thus connection setup can be continued

0x01: The keys displayed on the central and peripheral device do not coincide, thus connection setup shall be canceled

Response (CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x64	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Answer accepted

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.2.13. CMD_GETBONDS_REQ

This command requests the MAC addresses of all bonded devices.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x0F	0x00 0x00	0x0D

Response (CMD_GETBONDS_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	#Devices	Payload	CS
0x02	0x4F	2 Bytes	1 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 2) Bytes	1 Byte

The Payload sequentially lists the data of the bonded #Devices devices. It consists of #Devices times the following telegram (see example below).

Bond_ID	BTMAC
2 Bytes	6 Bytes

Status:

0x00: Request successfully processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted



If there are too many devices, the response of the CMD_GETBONDS_REQ is split into several CMD_GETBONDS_CNF messages.

9.2.13.1. Example 1

Request for the bonding data of the devices in database.

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x0F	0x00 0x00	0x0D

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	#Devices	Payload	CS
0x02	0x4F	0x12 0x00	0x00	0x02	0x00 0x00 0x82 0x5C 0xA7 0xE2 0x87 0xD0 0x01 0x00 0x01 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	0x53

Two devices have been bonded before:

- Device 1 (Bond_ID 0x0000) with FS_BTMAC 0x82 0x5C 0xA7 0xE2 0x87 0xD0
- Device 2 (Bond_ID 0x0001) with FS_BTMAC 0x01 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00

9.2.14. CMD_DELETEBONDS_REQ

This command removes the bonding information of all or single bonded devices. Enter Bond_ID to remove the bonding data of a certain Bond_ID. To remove all bonding data, choose Length equals 0 and leave Bond_ID empty.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Bond_ID	CS
0x02	0x0E	2 Bytes	0 or 2 Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_DELETEBONDS_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x4E	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request successfully processed

0x01: Operation failed (e.g. Bond_ID not found)

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.2.14.1. Example 1

Request to remove all bonding data.

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x0E	0x00 0x00	0x0C

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x4E	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x4D

Successfully removed all bonding information.

9.2.14.2. Example 2

Request to remove the bonding of the device corresponding to Bond_ID 0.

Start signal	Command	Length	Bond_ID	CS
0x02	0x0E	0x02 0x00	0x00 0x00	0x0E

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x4E	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x4D

Successfully removed the bonding information.

9.2.15. CMD_ALLOWUNBONDEDCONNECTIONS_REQ

In case the SECFLAGS_BONDEDCONNECTIONSONLY_ENABLE bit has been set in the RF_SecFlags user setting, this command temporarily allows the connection setup of unbonded devices until the radio module is reset.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x2D	0x00 0x00	0x2F

Response (CMD_ALLOWUNBONDEDCONNECTIONS_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x6D	2 Bytes	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request successfully processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.3. Transmit and receive data

9.3.1. CMD_DATA_REQ

This command provides the simple data transfer between two connected modules. Transmission takes place to the previously connected device(s). This command is suitable for transmission for a point-to-point connection. The number of payload data Bytes is negotiated during the connection phase. It can be maximal 243 Bytes, but at least 19 Bytes.

When the data is processed by the module a CMD_DATA_CNF is sent to the host. Additionally a CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP will follow as soon as the data has been sent.

The receiving Proteus-III will get a CMD_DATA_IND message containing the transmitted payload data.

In "high throughput mode" the length of data packets may be up to 964 Bytes. Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Payload	CS
0x02	0x04	2 Bytes	Length Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_DATA_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x44	2 Bytes	Length Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will send data now

0x01 + 0xXX: Operation failed + 0xXX maximum payload size (if it was exceeded)

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.3.2. CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP

This command is sent to the host as soon as the data, which was requested by a CMD_DATA_REQ has been transmitted successfully.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0xC4	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Data transmitted successfully

0x01: Data transmission failed

9.3.3. CMD_DATA_IND

This telegram indicates the reception of data sent by the previously connected device. This indication message is the result of a data request (CMD_DATA_REQ) sent to the associated device within a connection.

The CMD_DATA_IND returns the FS_BTMAC of the sending device, the RSSI value of the received data packet and the data received via the RF-interface, which can be found in the payload. The RSSI value is printed in two's complement notation.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	BTMAC	RSSI	Payload	CS
0x02	0x84	2 Bytes	6 Bytes	1 Byte	(Length - 7) Bytes	1 Byte

9.3.4. CMD_SETBEACON_REQ

This command is used to place user data in the scan response packet. The data is broadcasted frequently without acknowledgement and security. No connection is needed for this mode of operation.

It can be received by any scanning Proteus-III with Beacon-function enabled (see RF_BeaconFlags). The receiving module will output a CMD_BEACON_IND indication message containing the transmitted data. See chapter 7.7 for more information.

Choosing 0x00 as Length and leaving the Payload field empty will remove the data from the scan response packet. The number of payload data Bytes is limited to 19.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Payload	CS
0x02	0x0C	2 Bytes	Length Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_SETBEACON_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x4C	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will place data now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.3.5. CMD_BEACON_IND

This telegram indicates the reception of data Bytes that have been transmitted in a beacon-packet. This data can only be received, when the module is in ACTION_SCANNING mode and the beacon-function is enabled (see RF_BeaconFlags).

The data received via the RF-interface can be found in the payload of the CMD_BEACON_IND

telegram. Besides this, the FS_BTMAC of the sending device and the RSSI value of the data packet are output as well. The RSSI value is output in two's complement notation.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	BTMAC	RSSI	Payload	CS
0x02	0x8C	2 Bytes	6 Bytes	1 Byte	(Length - 7) Bytes	1 Byte

9.4. Configuring the module and modifying the device settings



It is strongly recommended to have identical settings on all devices, which have to open a connection with each other or are to be used in Beacon mode.

The module's parameters are stored in flash, but have a local copy in RAM. The flash parameters can be modified by the `CMD_SET_REQ`, read by the `CMD_GET_REQ` and retain their content even when resetting the module.

9.4.1. `CMD_SET_REQ`

This command enables direct manipulation of the parameters in the module's settings in flash. The respective parameters are accessed by means of the corresponding settings index, which can be found in Table 72.

Parameters of 2 or more Bytes have to be transferred with the LSB first unless noted differently in the corresponding description.



The modified parameters only take effect after a restart of the module. This may be done by a `CMD_RESET_REQ` if the module does not restart automatically.



The flash memory used to store these settings has a limited count of write cycles of minimum 10.000. Try to avoid performing periodic `CMD_SET_REQ` as each command will use one write cycle.



The validity of the specified parameters is not verified. Incorrect values can result in device malfunction!



To save the parameters in the flash memory of the module, the particular memory segment must first be flushed entirely and then restored from RAM. If a reset occurs during this procedure, the entire memory area may be corrupted (e.g. due to supply voltage fluctuations).

Recommendation: First, verify the configuration of the module with `CMD_GET_REQ` and only then apply a `CMD_SET_REQ` if required to avoid unnecessary flash cycles.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	2 Bytes	1 Byte	(Length - 1) Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_SET_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, settings set successfully

0x01: Operation failed due to invalid parameter

0x04: Serious error, when writing flash. Try to factory reset or re-flash the device

0x05: Supply voltage below 1.8V ±5%. Please apply correct supply voltage, reset and retry.

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.4.1.1. Example 1

Setting the advertising time RF_AdvertisingTimeout to 180 seconds.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x07	0xB4 0x00	0xA3

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

Setting was set successfully.

9.4.1.2. Example 2

Setting the static pass key RF_StaticPasskey to "123456".

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x07 0x00	0x12	0x31 0x32 0x33 0x34 0x35 0x36	0x01

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

Setting was set successfully.

9.4.2. CMD_GET_REQ

This command can be used to query individual setting parameters in flash. The respective parameters are accessed by means of the corresponding settings index, which can be found in Table 72.

Parameters of 2 or more Bytes have to be transferred with the LSB first unless noted differently in the corresponding description.

Read access to the memory area outside the setting is blocked.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Response (CMD_GET_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	2 Bytes	1 Byte	(Length - 1) Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, read out of setting successful

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.4.2.1. Example 1

Request the current static pass key RF_StaticPasskey.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x12	0x01

Response: The current RF_StaticPasskey in flash is "123123" (0x31 0x32 0x33 0x31 0x32 0x33).

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x07 0x00	0x00	0x31 0x32 0x33 0x31 0x32 0x33	0x55

Setting was read successfully.

9.5. Manage the device state

9.5.1. CMD_GETSTATE_REQ

This command returns the current state of the module.



Please refer to chapter 7 for details on the states of the module.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x01	0x00 0x00	0x03

Response (CMD_GETSTATE_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Module role	Module actions	More info	CS
0x02	0x41	2 Bytes	1 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 2) Bytes	1 Byte

Module role:

0x00: No role

0x01: Peripheral

0x02: Central

0x10: Direct test mode (DTM)

Other: Reserved

Module action:

0x00: No action

0x01: Idle (advertising)

0x02: Scanning

0x03: Connected

0x04: Sleep (system-off mode)

0x05: Direct test mode

0x06: Connected, but link is still closed (central must enable notifications first)

More info:

- If module action is "Connected"
 - 6 Bytes FS_BTMAC address of the connected device
 - 1 Byte indicating the maximum payload of the connection
- Otherwise, more info is empty

9.5.1.1. Example 1

Get the current state of the module.

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x01	0x00 0x00	0x03

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Module role	Module actions	More info	CS
0x02	0x41	0x09 0x00	0x02	0x03	0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00 0xF3	0x6B

The module is connected to another module with FS_BTMAC 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00. The MTU of the connection is **243** Bytes.

9.5.2. CMD_RESET_REQ

This command triggers a software reset of the module.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x02

Response (CMD_RESET_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x40	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will perform reset now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.5.3. CMD_SLEEP_REQ

This command is used to start the system-off mode (ACTION_SLEEP). For more details, see chapter 7.4.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x02	0x00 0x00	0x00

Response (CMD_SLEEP_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x42	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will go to sleep now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted



Please note that the *WAKE_UP* pin has a second function. If the module is not in ACTION_SLEEP mode and the UART was disabled using the CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ, the UART can be re-enabled by applying falling edge, holding the line low for at least 10 ms before applying a rising edge and holding it high for at least 10 ms. In this case the module answers with a CMD_UARTEENABLE_IND message.

9.5.4. CMD_SLEEP_IND

This indication is sent by the module when the RF_AdvertisingTimeout has expired without a connection to the module.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x82	0x01 0x00	0x00	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Advertising timeout detected, will go to sleep now

9.5.5. CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ

This command triggers a factory reset of the module. First, the default user settings are restored, then the module is reset.



Please note that also the GPIO configuration specified in chapter 13 is reset to default.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x1C	0x00 0x00	0x1E

Response (CMD_FACTORYRESET_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x5C	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will perform factory reset now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted



To save the parameters in the flash memory of the module, the particular memory segment must first be flushed entirely and then restored from RAM. If a reset occurs during this procedure (e.g. due to supply voltage fluctuations), the entire memory area may be destroyed.



During start-up of the device, the user settings memory is checked for consistency. In case of inconsistency (e.g. the memory was erased) the device will perform a factory reset.



This command also removes all bonding data.

9.5.6. CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ

This command disables the UART of the module. It will be re-enabled when the module has to send data to the host (e.g. data was received via RF or a state is indicated) or if the *WAKE_UP* pin is used (apply a falling edge, hold low for at least 10 ms before applying a rising edge and hold high for at least 10 ms). In this case, either the received data or a CMD_UARTEENABLE_IND is transmitted by the module. Afterwards the UART will stay active until another CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ or CMD_SLEEP_REQ or a timer triggered sleep event occurs.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x1B	0x00 0x00	0x19

Response (CMD_UARTDISABLE_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x5B	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will disable UART now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted



It is strongly recommended to disable the UART only, if it is foreseeable that there will be no UART communication for several seconds. Use cases could be during advertising phase to wait for connecting Bluetooth® LE devices or when broadcasting data via Beacons.



Disabling the UART peripheral of the module results in a reduction of current consumption of about 550µA.



Please note that the *WAKE_UP* pin has a second function. If the module is in ACTION_SLEEP mode, this pin wakes up the module by applying a low signal at this for at least 5ms and releasing it to high. In this case, the module answers with a CMD_GETSTATE_CNF.

9.5.7. CMD_UARTENABLE_IND

This indication is shown when the UART of the module is re-enabled (after performing a CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ followed by using the *WAKE_UP* pin). After receiving this message the UART can be used for any operation again.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x9B	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: UART has been re-enabled successfully

9.5.8. CMD_BOOTLOADER_REQ

This command resets the module and starts the OTA bootloader.



Please refer to chapter 16 on how to use the bootloader for a firmware update.



Please note that you can only exit the bootloader mode by performing a hardware reset using the respective pin.



The bootloader mode will also be enabled if the firmware image is marked "invalid" or if the *BOOT* pin logic level (set by the host) is set to start the bootloader during start-up of the module.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x1F	0x00 0x00	0x1D

Response (CMD_BOOTLOADER_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x5F	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will start bootloader now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.6. Run the Bluetooth test modes

The test modes "DTM" as specified by the Bluetooth® SIG are defined in the Bluetooth® Core specification.

9.6.1. CMD_DTMSTART_REQ

This command restarts the module in direct test mode (DTM). When starting in DTM mode, a CMD_GETSTATE_CNF message follows which indicates that the test mode has been enabled successfully. Now the CMD_DTM_REQ can be used to start and stop various test modes.

Performing a reset will leave the DTM and restart the module in the ACTION_IDLE state.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x1D	0x00 0x00	0x1F

Response (CMD_DTMSTART_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x5D	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received, will enable the direct test mode now

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

9.6.2. CMD_DTM_REQ

This command starts and stops various test modes. To be able to run these test modes, the DTM has to be enabled first using the CMD_DTMSTART_REQ. After a test has been started, it has to be stopped first before a next test can be run.

The default TX power value is 8 dBm, the allowed range is from -40 up to +8 dBm (see chapter 10.17 for valid TX power values). The valid range for channel is 0...39.



Configuring the phy and TX power can be only done, when the test is stopped (no TX or RX test ongoing).

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte

Command code:

0x00: DTM setup

Vendor option	Vendor command	Payload
0x00: Reset DTM	0x00	0x00
0x02: Set phy	New phy 1. 0x01: 1 Mbit 2. 0x02: 2 MBit 3. 0x03: S8 LE Coded 4. 0x04: S2 LE Coded	0x00

0x01: Start RX test

Channel	Length	Payload
Frequency = (2402 + Channel * 2) MHz to be used for RX	0x00	0x00

0x02: Start TX test

Channel	Length	Payload
Frequency = (2402 + Channel * 2) MHz to be used for TX	Length of the packet to send	Bit pattern 0x00: PRBS9 0x01: 0x0F 0x02: 0x55

Vendor option	Vendor command	Payload
Frequency = (2402 + Channel * 2) MHz to be used for TX	0x00: Carrier test	0x03: Vendor specific
TX power -40 up to +8 dBm (see chapter 10.17 for valid TX power values)	0x02: Set TX power	0x03: Vendor specific

0x03: Stop last test

Channel	Length	Payload
0x00	0x00	0x00

Response (CMD_DTM_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	2 Bytes	1 Byte	0-2 Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received

0x01: Operation failed

0x03: Busy

0xFF: Operation not permitted

Result:

0x0000: Test success

0x0001: Test failed

0x8000 + n: Received n packets during RX test



See also the example in chapter 7.10.

9.6.2.1. Example: Transmission, 16 times 0x0F, channel 0

Start the transmission test on channel 0 (2402 MHz). The packets consist of 16 times 0x0F:

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	0x02	0x00	0x10	0x01	0x0B

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x5F

Test started successfully. Now stop the test again.

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	0x03	0x00	0x00	0x01	0x1A

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x80 0x00	0xDF

Test stopped successfully and received 0 packets.

9.6.2.2. Example: Receiver, channel 0

Start the reception test on channel 0 (2402 MHz):

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	0x01	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x19

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x5F

Test started successfully. In between we started the transmission test on a second module. When we stop RX test now, we can count the received packets from the transmitting module.

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	0x03	0x00	0x00	0x01	0x0B

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x8E 0x67	0xB6

Test stopped successfully and received 0x0E67 (3687) packets.

9.6.2.3. Example: Transmission, carrier test, channel 0

Start the carrier test on channel 0 (2402 MHz). We need to use a vendor specific command:

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	0x02	0x00	0x00	0x03	0x19

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x5F

See the previous example to stop the test again.

9.6.2.4. Example: Set TX power to -4 dBm

Set the TX power to -4 dBm (0xFC in two's complement notation):

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	0x02	0xFC	0x02	0x03	0xE7

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x5F

9.6.2.5. Example: Set PHY to 2 MBit mode

Set the phy to 2 MBit mode:

Start signal	Command	Length	Command code	Channel / Vendor option	Length / Vendor command	Payload	CS
0x02	0x1E	0x04 0x00	0x00	0x02	0x02	0x00	0x18

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Result	CS
0x02	0x5E	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x5F

9.7. Switching GPIOs by remote control

This chapter contains the commands to use the GPIO feature of the Proteus-III. Please refer to chapter 13 for a detailed description.

9.7.1. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_REQ

This command configures the free GPIOs of the radio module. This is necessary to allow local and remote GPIO control. As the configuration is stored in flash, it is retained after restarting the device.



The flash memory used to store these settings has a limited count of write cycles of minimum 10.000. Try to avoid performing periodic CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_REQ as each command will use one write cycle.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x25	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x65	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_REQ block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Function	Values
1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 2) Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Function:

- 0x00:** GPIO disconnected
- 0x01:** GPIO works as input
- 0x02:** GPIO works as output
- 0x03:** GPIO works as PWM

Values:

- if **Function** is disconnected, Length is 0x03:
0x00: value field must use 0x00.
- if **Function** is input, Length is 0x03:
0x00: GPIO has no pull resistor
0x01: GPIO has internal pull down resistor
0x02: GPIO has internal pull up resistor
- if **Function** is output, Length is 0x03:
0x00: GPIO is output LOW
0x01: GPIO is output HIGH
- if **Function** is PWM, Length is 0x05 (see chapter 13.1):
Byte 0 and 1: LSB first uint16 PWM period in ms (1 - 500 ms)
Byte 2: Ratio (0x00=0%,..., 0xFE=100%)

CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_CNF block structure

 Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Status
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Status:

- 0x00:** Success
- 0x01:** Failed

9.7.1.1. Example: Configure two GPIOs to output high

 Configure the GPIOs with ID **0x01** and **0x02** to output high:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0x25	0x08 0x00	0x03 0x01 0x02 0x01	0x03 0x02 0x02 0x01	0x2C

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0x65	0x07 0x00	0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x02 0x02 0x00	0x63

Configured both GPIOs with success.

9.7.2. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READCONFIG_REQ

This command reads the current configuration of the free GPIOs of the radio module.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x2B	0x00 0x00	0x29

Response (CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READCONFIG_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x6B	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READCONFIG_CNF block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Function	Values
1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 2) Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Function:

0x00: GPIO is disconnected

0x01: GPIO works as input

0x02: GPIO works as output

0x03: GPIO works as PWM

Values:

- if **Function** is disconnected, Length is 0x02:

Values field is not used in this block

- if **Function** is input, Length is 0x03:

0x00: GPIO has no pull resistor

0x01: GPIO has pull down resistor

0x02: GPIO has pull up resistor

- if **Function** is output, Length is 0x03:

0x00: GPIO is output LOW

0x01: GPIO is output HIGH

- if **Function** is PWM, Length is 0x05 (see chapter 13.1):

Byte 0 and 1: LSB first uint16 PWM period in ms (1 - 500 ms)

Byte 2: Ratio (0x00=0%, . . . , 0xFE=100%)

9.7.2.1. Example: Read the current GPIO configuration

Read the current configuration:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x2B	0x00 0x00	0x29

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Blocks	CS
0x02	0x6B	0x15 0x00	0x00	0x03 0x01 0x02 0x01 0x03 0x02 0x02 0x01 0x02 0x03 0x00 0x02 0x04 0x00 0x02 0x05 0x00 0x02 0x06 0x00	0x7B

The GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** and **0x02** are output high. The remaining GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x03,0x04,0x05** and **0x06** are not configured.

9.7.3. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ

This command configures the free GPIOs of the connected remote device. This is necessary to allow remote GPIO control. As the configuration is stored in flash, it is retained after restarting the device. This command can be run successfully only if the remote device is connected via Bluetooth® LE.



The flash memory used to store these settings has a limited count of write cycles of minimum 10.000. Try to avoid performing periodic CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ as each command will use one write cycle.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x28	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x68	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Function	Values
1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 2) Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Function:

0x00: GPIO disconnected

0x01: GPIO works as input

0x02: GPIO works as output

0x03: GPIO works as PWM

Values:

- if **Function** is disconnected, Length is 0x03:
 - 0x00:** value field must use 0x00.
- if **Function** is input, Length is 0x03:
 - 0x00:** GPIO has no pull resistor
 - 0x01:** GPIO has internal pull down resistor
 - 0x02:** GPIO has internal pull up resistor
- if **Function** is output, Length is 0x03:
 - 0x00:** GPIO is output LOW
 - 0x01:** GPIO is output HIGH
- if **Function** is PWM, Length is 0x05 (see chapter 13.1):
 - Byte 0 and 1:** LSB first uint16 PWM period in ms (1 - 500 ms)
 - Byte 2:** Ratio (0x00=0%, ..., 0xFE=100%)

CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_CNF block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Status
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Status:

0x00: Success

0x01: Failed

0xFF: Remote configuration not allowed (blocked by the user setting CFG_Flags of the remote device)

9.7.3.1. Example: Configure two GPIOs of the connected remote device to output high

Configure the GPIOs with ID **0x01** and **0x02** to output high:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0x28	0x08 0x00	0x03 0x01 0x02 0x01	0x03 0x02 0x02 0x01	0x21

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0x68	0x07 0x00	0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x02 0x02 0x00	0x6E

Configured both GPIOs with success.

9.7.4. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READCONFIG_REQ

This command reads the current configuration of the free GPIOs of the connected remote device.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x2C	0x00 0x00	0x2E

Response (CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READCONFIG_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x6C	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted

CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READCONFIG_CNF block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Function	Values
1 Byte	1 Byte	1 Byte	(Length - 2) Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Function:

0x00: GPIO is disconnected

0x01: GPIO works as input

0x02: GPIO works as output

0x03: GPIO works as PWM

Values:

- if **Function** is disconnected, Length is 0x02:

Values field is not used in this block

- if **Function** is input, Length is 0x03:

0x00: GPIO has no pull resistor

0x01: GPIO has pull down resistor

0x02: GPIO has pull up resistor

- if **Function** is output, Length is 0x03:

0x00: GPIO is output LOW

0x01: GPIO is output HIGH

- if **Function** is PWM, Length is 0x05 (see chapter 13.1):

Byte 0 and 1: LSB first uint16 PWM period in ms (1 - 500 ms)

Byte 2: Ratio (0x00=0%, . . . , 0xFE=100%)

9.7.4.1. Example: Read the current GPIO configuration of the connected remote device

Read the current GPIO configuration of the connected remote device:

Start signal	Command	Length	CS
0x02	0x2C	0x00 0x00	0x2E

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Blocks	CS
0x02	0x6C	0x15 0x00	0x00	0x03 0x01 0x02 0x01 0x03 0x02 0x02 0x01 0x02 0x03 0x00 0x02 0x04 0x00 0x02 0x05 0x00 0x02 0x06 0x00	0x7C

The GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** and **0x02** are output high. The remaining GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x03,0x04,0x05** and **0x06** are not configured.

9.7.5. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_REQ

This command writes the free GPIOs of the remote device. This command can be only run successfully if the respective pins of the remote device have been configured as output pins before and the remote device is connected via Bluetooth® LE.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x29	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x69	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted (i.e. no device connected via Bluetooth® LE)

CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_REQ block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Value
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Value:

- if **Function** is output

0x00: Set GPIO to LOW

0x01: Set GPIO to HIGH

- if **Function** is PWM

Byte 0: Ratio (0x00=0%, ..., 0xFE=100%)

CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_CNF block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Status
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Status:

0x00: Success

0x01: Failed

9.7.5.1. Example: Set a remote output GPIO to low

Set the output GPIO (GPIO_ID **0x01**) of the connected remote device to low:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	CS
0x02	0x29	0x03 0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x2B

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	CS
0x02	0x69	0x04 0x00	0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x6C

Successfully set GPIO with GPIO_ID **0x01** to low.

9.7.6. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_REQ

This command reads the free GPIOs of the remote device. This command can be only run successfully if the respective pins of the remote device have been configured as output or input pins before and the remote device is connected via Bluetooth® LE.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	CS
0x02	0x2A	2 Bytes	x Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x6A	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted (i.e. no device connected via Bluetooth® LE)

CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_REQ block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID ₁	...	GPIO_ID _n
1 Bytes	1 Byte		1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_CNF block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Value
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Value:

- if **Function** is output or input
 - 0x00**: The remote GPIO is LOW.
 - 0x01**: The remote GPIO is HIGH.
 - 0xFF**: Failed reading remote GPIO value.
- if **Function** is PWM
 - 0xFF**: Failed reading remote GPIO value.
 - Other**: Ratio (0x00=0%, . . . , 0xFE=100%)

9.7.6.1. Example: Read the values of remote GPIOs

Read the value of the GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** and **0x02** of the connected remote device:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	CS
0x02	0x2A	0x03 0x00	0x02 0x01 0x02	0x2A

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0x6A	0x07 0x00	0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x02 0x02 0x01	0x6D

Successfully read the values of the remote GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** (GPIO is low) and **0x02** (GPIO is high).

9.7.7. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_REQ

This command writes the free GPIOs of the local device. This command can be only run successfully if the respective pins of the local device have been configured as output pins before.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x26	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x66	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted (i.e. no device connected via Bluetooth® LE)

CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_REQ block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Value
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Value:

- if **Function** is output

0x00: Set GPIO to LOW

0x01: Set GPIO to HIGH

- if **Function** is PWM

Byte 0: Ratio (0x00=0%, ..., 0xFE=100%)

CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_CNF block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Status
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Status:

0x00: Success

0x01: Failed

9.7.7.1. Example: Set a local output GPIO to low

Set the output GPIO (GPIO_ID **0x01**) of the local device to low:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	CS
0x02	0x26	0x03 0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x24

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	CS
0x02	0x66	0x04 0x00	0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x63

Successfully set GPIO with GPIO_ID **0x01** to low.

9.7.8. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_REQ

This command reads the free GPIOs of the local device. This command can be only run successfully if the respective pins of the local device have been configured as output or input pins before.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x27	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Response (CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_CNF):

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0x67	2 Bytes	1 Byte	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

Status:

0x00: Request received and processed

0x01: Operation failed

0xFF: Operation not permitted (i.e. no device connected via Bluetooth® LE)

CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_REQ block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID ₁	...	GPIO_ID _n
1 Bytes	1 Byte		1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_CNF block structure

Each **Block** has the following format:

Length	GPIO_ID	Value
0x02	1 Byte	1 Byte

Length: Length of the subsequent bytes in this block

GPIO_ID: ID of the GPIO, see chapter 13.2

Value:

- if **Function** is output or input
 - 0x00**: The remote GPIO is LOW.
 - 0x01**: The remote GPIO is HIGH.
 - 0xFF**: Failed reading GPIO value.
- if **Function** is PWM
 - 0xFF**: Failed reading GPIO value.
 - Other**: Ratio (0x00=0%, . . . , 0xFE=100%)

9.7.8.1. Example: Read the values of local GPIOs

Read the value of the GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** and **0x02** of the local device:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	CS
0x02	0x27	0x03 0x00	0x02 0x01 0x02	0x27

Response:

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0x67	0x07 0x00	0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x02 0x02 0x01	0x60

Successfully read the values of the local GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** (GPIO is low) and **0x02** (GPIO is high).

9.7.9. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_IND

This command indicates that the remote device has written the free GPIOs of the radio module.



Please note that only the GPIOs are part of this message, that have been configured successfully. Failed attempts of GPIO configurations will not be indicated by this message.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0xA8	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

The **Block** structure is as defined in `CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ` block structure.

9.7.9.1. Example: Two GPIOs have been configured by the connected remote device to output high

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0xA8	0x08 0x00	0x03 0x01 0x02 0x01	0x03 0x02 0x02 0x01	A1

The two GPIOs with ID **0x01** and **0x02** have been configured by the connected remote device to output high.

9.7.10. CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_IND

This command indicates that the remote device has written the free GPIOs of the radio module.



Please note that only the GPIOs are part of this message, that have been updated successfully. Failed attempts of GPIO updates will not be indicated by this message.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0xA9	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

The **Block** structure is as defined in `CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_CNF` block structure.

9.7.10.1. Example: GPIOs have been written via remote access

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0xA9	0x06 0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x02 0x02 0x01	0xAE

The remote device has written the GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** (GPIO is low) and **0x02** (GPIO is high).

9.7.11. CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_IND

This command indicates that the GPIOs of the remote device have been written by its local host.



Please note that only the GPIOs are part of this message, that have been updated successfully. Failed attempts of GPIO updates will not be indicated by this message.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	...	Block _n	CS
0x02	0xA6	2 Bytes	x Bytes		x Bytes	1 Byte

The **Block** is of structure as defined in CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_CNF block structure .

9.7.11.1. Example: GPIOs of the remote device have been written by its local host

Start signal	Command	Length	Block ₁	Block ₂	CS
0x02	0xA6	0x06 0x00	0x02 0x01 0x00	0x02 0x02 0x01	0xA1

The GPIOs with GPIO_ID **0x01** (GPIO is low) and **0x02** (GPIO is high) of the radio module have been written by its local host.

9.8. Other messages

9.8.1. CMD_ERROR_IND

This indication is shown when the module entered an error state.

Format:

Start signal	Command	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0xA2	0x01 0x00	1 Byte	1 Byte

Status:

0x01: UART_COMMUNICATION_ERROR The UART had a buffer overflow. Thus, UART TX and RX was aborted and UART has restarted. Please restart module if UART is still malfunctioning.

9.9. Message overview

Start signal	CMD	Message name	Short description	Chapter
0x02	0x00	CMD_RESET_REQ	Reset the module	9.5.2
0x02	0x01	CMD_GETSTATE_REQ	Request the current module state	9.5.1
0x02	0x02	CMD_SLEEP_REQ	Go to sleep	9.5.3
0x02	0x04	CMD_DATA_REQ	Send data to the connected device	9.3.1
0x02	0x06	CMD_CONNECT_REQ	Setup a connection with another device	9.2.1
0x02	0x07	CMD_DISCONNECT_REQ	Close the connection	9.2.5
0x02	0x09	CMD_SCANSTART_REQ	Start scan	9.1.1
0x02	0x0A	CMD_SCANSTOP_REQ	Stop scan	9.1.2
0x02	0x0B	CMD_GETDEVICES_REQ	Request the scanned/detected devices	9.1.3
0x02	0x0C	CMD_SETBEACON_REQ	Place data in scan response packet	9.3.4
0x02	0x0D	CMD_PASSKEY_REQ	Respond to a pass key request	9.2.9
0x02	0x0E	CMD_DELETEBONDS_REQ	Delete bonding information	9.2.14
0x02	0x0F	CMD_GETBONDS_REQ	Read the MACs of bonded devices	9.2.13
0x02	0x10	CMD_GET_REQ	Read the module settings in flash	9.4.2
0x02	0x11	CMD_SET_REQ	Modify the module settings in flash	9.4.1
0x02	0x1A	CMD_PHYUPDATE_REQ	Update the PHY	9.2.7
0x02	0x1B	CMD_UARTDISABLE_REQ	Disable the UART	9.5.6
0x02	0x1C	CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ	Perform a factory reset	9.5.5
0x02	0x1D	CMD_DTMSTART_REQ	Enable the direct test mode	9.6.1
0x02	0x1E	CMD_DTM_REQ	Start/stop a test of the direct test mode	9.6.2
0x02	0x1F	CMD_BOOTLOADER_REQ	Switch to the bootloader	9.5.8
0x02	0x24	CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ	Confirm/reject the displayed pass key	9.2.12
0x02	0x25	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_REQ	Configure the free GPIOs for remote control	9.7.1
0x02	0x26	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_REQ	Set the output value of a output GPIO of the current device	9.7.7

0x02	0x27	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_REQ	Read the value of a GPIO of the current device	9.7.8
0x02	0x28	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ	Configure the free GPIOs of the remote device for remote control	9.7.3
0x02	0x29	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_REQ	Set the output value of a output GPIO of a remote device	9.7.5
0x02	0x2A	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_REQ	Read the value of a GPIO of a remote device	9.7.6
0x02	0x2B	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READCONFIG_REQ	Read the GPIO configuration	9.7.2
0x02	0x2C	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READCONFIG_REQ	Read the GPIO configuration of the connected remote device	9.7.4
0x02	0x2D	CMD_ALLOWUNBONDEDCONNECTIONS_REQ	Temporarily allow the connection setup from unbonded peer devices	9.2.15

Table 63: Message overview: Requests

Start signal	CMD	Message name	Short description	Chapter
0x02	0x40	CMD_RESET_CNF	Reset request received	9.5.2
0x02	0x41	CMD_GETSTATE_CNF	Return the current module state	9.5.1
0x02	0x42	CMD_SLEEP_CNF	Sleep request received	9.5.3
0x02	0x44	CMD_DATA_CNF	Data transmission request received	9.3.1
0x02	0x46	CMD_CONNECT_CNF	Connection setup request received	9.2.1
0x02	0x47	CMD_DISCONNECT_CNF	Disconnection request received	9.2.5
0x02	0x49	CMD_SCANSTART_CNF	Scan started	9.1.1
0x02	0x4A	CMD_SCANSTOP_CNF	Scan stopped	9.1.2
0x02	0x4B	CMD_GETDEVICES_CNF	Output the scanned/detected devices	9.1.3
0x02	0x4C	CMD_SETBEACON_CNF	Data is placed in scan response packet	9.3.4
0x02	0x4D	CMD_PASSKEY_CNF	Received the pass key	9.2.9
0x02	0x4E	CMD_DELETEBONDS_CNF	Deleted bonding information	9.2.14
0x02	0x4F	CMD_GETBONDS_CNF	Return the MAC of all bonded devices	9.2.13
0x02	0x50	CMD_GET_CNF	Return the requested module flash settings	9.4.2

0x02	0x51	CMD_SET_CNF	Module flash settings have been modified	9.4.1
0x02	0x5A	CMD_PHYUPDATE_CNF	Update Phy request received	9.2.7
0x02	0x5B	CMD_UARTDISABLE_CNF	Disable UART request received	9.5.6
0x02	0x5C	CMD_FACTORYRESET_CNF	Factory reset request received	9.5.5
0x02	0x5D	CMD_DTMSTART_CNF	Enable the direct test mode now	9.6.1
0x02	0x5E	CMD_DTM_CNF	Test of direct test mode started/stopped	9.6.2
0x02	0x5F	CMD_BOOTLOADER_CNF	Will switch to bootloader now	9.5.8
0x02	0x64	CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_CNF	CMD_NUMERIC_COMP_REQ accepted	9.2.12
0x02	0x65	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_CNF	Configuration of a local GPIO for remote control done	9.7.1
0x02	0x66	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_CNF	Output value of a local GPIO set	9.7.7
0x02	0x67	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_CNF	Value of a local GPIO read	9.7.8
0x02	0x68	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_CNF	Configuration of a remote GPIO for remote control done	9.7.3
0x02	0x69	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_CNF	Output value of a remote GPIO set	9.7.5
0x02	0x6A	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_CNF	Value of a remote GPIO read	9.7.6
0x02	0x6B	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READCONFIG_CNF	Returns the GPIO configuration	9.7.2
0x02	0x6C	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READCONFIG_CNF	Returns the GPIO configuration of the connected remote device	9.7.4
0x02	0x6D	CMD_ALLOWUNBONDEDCONNECTIONS_CNF	Temporarily allowed the connection setup from unbonded peer devices	9.2.15

Table 64: Message overview: Confirmations

Start signal	CMD	Message name	Short description	Chapter
0x02	0x82	CMD_SLEEP_IND	State will be changed to ACTION_SLEEP	9.5.4
0x02	0x84	CMD_DATA_IND	Data has been received	9.3.3
0x02	0x86	CMD_CONNECT_IND	Connection established	9.2.2
0x02	0x87	CMD_DISCONNECT_IND	Disconnected	9.2.6
0x02	0x88	CMD_SECURITY_IND	Secured connection established	9.2.3
0x02	0x8B	CMD_RSSI_IND	Proteus-III advertising package detected	9.1.4
0x02	0x8C	CMD_BEACON_IND	Received Beacon data	9.3.5

0x02	0x8D	CMD_PASSKEY_IND	Received a pass key request	9.2.10
0x02	0x9A	CMD_PHYUPDATE_IND	PHY has been updated	9.2.8
0x02	0x9B	CMD_UARTENABLE_IND	UART was re-enabled	9.5.7
0x02	0xA2	CMD_ERROR_IND	Entered error state	9.8.1
0x02	0xA4	CMD_DISPLAY_PASSKEY_IND	Display pass key	9.2.11
0x02	0xA6	CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_IND	Local host has written the GPIOs of the remote device	9.7.11
0x02	0xA8	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_IND	Remote device has configured the GPIOs of the module	9.7.9
0x02	0xA9	CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_IND	Remote device has written the GPIOs of the module	9.7.10
0x02	0xC4	CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP	Data has been sent	9.3.2
0x02	0xC6	CMD_CHANNELOPEN_RSP	Channel open, data transmission possible	9.2.4
0x02	0xCC	CMD_BEACON_RSP	Advertising package detected	9.1.5

Table 65: Message overview: Indications

10. User settings - Module configuration values

The settings described in this chapter are stored permanently in the module's flash memory. Depending on their corresponding permissions, their current values can be read out by the `CMD_GET_REQ` command or modified by the `CMD_SET_REQ` command. To do so the corresponding settings index is used, which can be found in the primary table of each setting description.



The validity of the specified parameters is not verified. Incorrect values can result in device malfunction.



After the modification of the non-volatile parameters, a reset will be necessary for the changes to be applied.

10.1. FS_DeviceInfo: Read the chip type and OS version

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
15	FS_DeviceInfo	-	-	read	12

This setting contains information about the chip type and the OS version. The value of `FS_DeviceInfo` is composed of the following 4 sub parameters (ordered by appearance in the response):

OS version	Build code	Package variant	Chip ID
2 Bytes	4 Bytes	2 Bytes	4 Bytes

OS version:

0x00B6 : Softdevice S140 6.1.1.

0x00C1 : Softdevice S140 7.0.0.

0x00CA : Softdevice S140 7.0.1.

Package variant:

0x2004: QFN - QI

0x2005: WLCSP - CK

Chip ID:

0x00052840: nRF52840

Packet variant	Package	Flash size	RAM size
QFN	QFN73	1024 kB	256 kB
WLCSP	WLCSP	1024 kB	256 kB

Table 66: nRF52840 IC revision overview

10.1.1. Example 1

Request the device info of the module using `CMD_GET_REQ` with settings index 15

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x0F	0x1C

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the device info (with Byte order changed to MSB first):

OS version = 0x00B6 (Softdevice S140 6.1.1)

Build code = 0x41414330 (AAC0)

Package variant = 0x2004 (QFN)

Chip ID = 0x00052840

Please note that LSB is transmitted first in case of parameters with more than 1 Byte length.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x0D 0x00	0x00	0xB6 0x00 0x30 0x43 0x41 0x41 0x04 0x20 0x40 0x28 0x05 0x00	0xD3

10.2. FS_FWVersion: Read the firmware version

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
1	FS_FWVersion	-	-	read	3

This setting contains the firmware version of the module.

10.2.1. Example 1

Request the firmware version of the module using `CMD_GET_REQ` with settings index 1

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x01	0x12

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the firmware version, for this example it is 0x000001 so "1.0.0" (with the parameter reverted to MSB first).

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x04 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00 0x01	0x57

10.3. FS_MAC: Read the MAC address

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
3	FS_MAC	-	-	read	8

This setting contains the unique MAC address of the module.

10.3.1. Example 1

Request the MAC address of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 3

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x03	0x10

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the MAC address 0x55 0x93 0x19 0x6E 0x5B 0x87 0x01 0x38

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x09 0x00	0x00	0x55 0x93 0x19 0x6E 0x5B 0x87 0x01 0x38	0x0F

10.4. FS_BTMAC: Modify the Bluetooth conform MAC address

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
4	FS_BTMAC	See description	See description	read/write	6

This setting contains the Bluetooth® LE conform **public** MAC address of the module. It is used to identify the device on the radio interface.

By default, it is set to the MAC address bought by Würth Elektronik eiSos which consists of the Würth Elektronik eiSos MAC ID 0x00018DA followed by the FS_SerialNumber of the module.

Nevertheless, the FS_BTMAC can be set to any public MAC address, other than 0x000000000000 and 0xFFFFFFFFFFFF. For purchasing public MAC addresses, please refer to the IEEE standards associaton [5]. If set to 0xFFFFFFFFFFFF, the Proteus-III uses the default address mentioned above.

Please note that LSB is transmitted first in all commands.

10.4.1. Example 1

Set the Bluetooth®-conform MAC address of the module to 0x31 0x32 0x33 0x34 0x35 0x36 using `CMD_SET_REQ` with settings index 4

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x07 0x00	0x04	0x31 0x32 0x33 0x34 0x35 0x36	0x17

Response `CMD_SET_CNF`: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.4.2. Example 2

Request the Bluetooth®-conform MAC address of the module using `CMD_GET_REQ` with settings index 4

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x04	0x17

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the Bluetooth® LE conform MAC address 0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x07 0x00	0x00	0x11 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	0x86

10.5. FS_SerialNumber: Read the serial number of the module

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
16	FS_SerialNumber	-	-	read	3

This setting contains the serial number of the module.

10.5.1. Example 1

Request the serial number of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 16

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x10	0x03

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the serial number, it is 0.0.11

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x04 0x00	0x00	0x11 0x00 0x00	0x47

10.6. RF_DeviceName: Modify the device name

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
2	RF_DeviceName	See description	"Prot3"	read/write	1-31



This parameter is using MSB first notation.

This parameter determines the name of the module, which is used in the advertising packets as well as in the Generic Access Profile (GAP). The permissible characters are in the range of 0x20 - 0x7E which are special characters (see ASCII table), alphabetic characters (a-z and A-Z), numbers (0-9) and whitespace.



The maximum size of the device name that fits into an advertising packet is 5 Bytes in default configuration. With help of the user setting RF_AdvertisingFlags it can be extended. Longer device names will be shortened and declared as "Shortened Local Name" in the advertising packet. The full device name is included in the GAP.

10.6.1. Example 1

Set the device name of the module to 0x4D 0x4F 0x44 0x20 0x31 = "MOD 1" using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 2.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x06 0x00	0x02	0x4D 0x4F 0x44 0x20 0x31	0x40

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.6.2. Example 2

Request the device name of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 2:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x02	0x11

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the module name as 0x41 0x32 0x37 0x32 0x31 = "A2721".

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x06 0x00	0x00	0x41 0x32 0x37 0x32 0x31	0x13

10.7. RF_StaticPasskey: Modify the static passkey

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
18	RF_StaticPasskey	See description	"123123"	read/write	6

This setting determines the static pass key of the peripheral device used for authentication. If the static pass key security mode is enabled by the peripheral, this key must be entered in the central device. In case of a Proteus-III central, the command to enter this pass key during connection setup is the CMD_PASSKEY_REQ.

The permissible characters are ranging from 0x30 to 0x39 (both included) which are ASCII numbers (0-9). This is due to the fact that mobile phones prefer numbers only for the passkey.

10.7.1. Example 1

Set the static pass key of the module to 0x31 0x32 0x33 0x34 0x35 0x36 = "123456" using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 18

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x07 0x00	0x12	0x31 0x32 0x33 0x34 0x35 0x36	0x01

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.7.2. Example 2

Request the static pass key of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 18

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x12	0x01

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the key as 0x31 0x32 0x33 0x34 0x35 0x36 = "123456"

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x07 0x00	0x00	0x31 0x32 0x33 0x34 0x35 0x36	0x52

10.8. RF_SecFlags: Modify the security settings

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
12	RF_SecFlags	See description	0	read/write	1

This 8-Bit field configures security settings of the module. Chapter 7.6 contains further information about secure connections.



When connecting from a Proteus-III to another Proteus-III, be sure that the same security mode is used.



When connecting from a foreign device to a Proteus-III, the peripheral (Proteus-III) determines the minimum security level needed for communication. So configure the RF_SecFlags of the peripheral to set the desired security level.



When updating this user setting (like enabling bonding or changing the security mode) please remove all existing bonding data using the command CMD_DELETEBONDS_REQ.

Bit no.	Description		
2 : 0	Security mode configuration. Depending on its value, different modes are chosen when setting up a secure connection. In firmware version 2.1.0 and newer the peripheral decides which is the minimum security level to access its data.		
	0x0	No security	Data is transmitted without authentication and encryption.
	0x1	LESC just works level 1.2	Each time a connection is established, new random keys are exchanged in advance to use them for data encryption. This mode uses the "just works" method with keys generated by the LESC method (low energy elliptic curve)
	0x2	Just works level 1.2	Each time a connection is established, new random keys are exchanged in advance to use them for data encryption. This mode uses the "just works" method.
	0x3	Static pass key level 1.3	For authentication, the RF_StaticPasskey is used. If the peripheral uses this method, the central device must enter the correct passkey to finalize the connection.
	0x4	LESC numeric comparison level 1.4	For authentication, the peripheral and central device output a pass key. The central and peripheral device must confirm the pass key to finalize the connection in case both keys coincide. Otherwise reject it to cancel the connection. The pass key is generated using the LESC method (low energy elliptic curve).
	0x5	LESC pass key level 1.4	For authentication, the peripheral outputs a passkey. The central device must enter this pass key to finalize the connection. The pass key is generated using the LESC method (low energy elliptic curve).
3	others		
	Reserved		
4	SECFLAGS_BONDING_ENABLE: If this Bit is set, bonding is enabled when using one of the pairing methods. Bonding data of up to 32 devices will be stored in the flash. If bonding storage is full, the bonding information that has not been used for the longest period will be removed.		
7 : 5	SECFLAGS_BONDEDCONNECTIONSONLY_ENABLE: If this Bit is set, only bonded peer devices are allowed to connect. All connection requests from any unbonded peer device are rejected. In case this restriction shall be disabled temporarily to setup a bonding to a new peer device, use the command CMD_ALLOWUNBONDEDCONNECTIONS_REQ, which temporarily disables this restriction. If this feature is enabled, the maximum number of bonded devices is reduced to 8.		
7 : 5			

Table 67: Security configuration flags



Since the security modes "Lesc pass key" and "Lesc numeric comparison" output the LESC key on the UART, it is essential to use the command mode. In other words, the peripheral only mode does not support the lesc security modes.

10.8.1. Example 1

Set the security flags to 0x0B, to use the static passkey pairing and with bonding enabled, using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 12

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x0C	0x0B	0x16

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.8.2. Example 2

Request the security flags of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 12

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x0C	0x1F

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 2, which means that the just works pairing mode is enabled.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x02	0x52

10.9. RF_SecFlagsPerOnly: Modify the security settings (Peripheral only mode)

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
44	RF_SecFlagsPerOnly	See description	11	read/write	1

This user setting determines the security setting of the peripheral only mode. Please refer to the setting RF_SecFlags for more details.



Since the security modes "Lesc pass key" and "Lesc numeric comparison" output the LESC key on the UART, it is essential to use the command mode. In other words, the peripheral only mode does not support the lesc security modes.

10.9.1. Example 1

Set the security flags to 0x02 to use the just works pairing, using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 44

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x2C	0x02	0x3F

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.9.2. Example 2

Request the security flags of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 44

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x2C	0x3F

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 2, which means that the just works pairing mode is enabled.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x02	0x52

10.10. RF_ScanFlags: Modify the scan behavior

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
13	RF_ScanFlags	See description	0	read/write	1

This 8-Bit field configures the scan behavior of the module. To use multiple settings, add the Bit numbers and choose the result as value for RF_ScanFlags.

Bit no.	Description
0	If this Bit is set, an active scan is performed when using CMD_SCANSTART_REQ. In this case, after receiving an advertising packet a scan request is sent to the advertising module that returns a scan response containing additional information. For the communication of Proteus-III modules, active scanning is only needed when using Beacons. In this case, it is enabled automatically by the firmware. Note that if receiving raw Beacon data is enabled (RF_BeaconFlags is set to 0x02) and raw scan response packets should be received as well, it is necessary to set this bit manually. Also note that active scanning increases the current consumption.
7 : 1	Reserved

Table 68: Scan configuration flags

10.10.1. Example 1

Set the scan flags to 0x01 to enable active scanning using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 13

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x0D	0x01	0x1D

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.10.2. Example 2

Request the scan flags of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 13

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x0D	0x1E

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0, which means that active scan is disabled.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x00	0x50

10.11. RF_BeaconFlags: Interpret the advertising data

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
14	RF_BeaconFlags	See description	0	read/write	1

This field configures the reception of Beacons.

Value	Description
0x01	Receive all Beacons from Proteus-III devices in range. Each received packet is interpreted and is sent to the host via a CMD_BEACON_IND message.
0x02	All received advertising data / beacons is output in raw format via a CMD_BEACON_RSP message.
0x03	Same as '0x01' plus additional filter. This filter discards redundant packets that contain the same content.
0x04	A CMD_RSSI_IND message is output each time when an advertising packet with WE SPP-like UUID is received. This feature can be used to realize a position sensing application, since the CMD_RSSI_IND contains the current TX power level and the current RSSI value besides the FS_BTMAC of the sending device.
Others	Reserved.

Table 69: Beacon configuration flags



The internal database of the module may host the advertising data of 25 different devices. If the data base is full, the oldest entry is removed.



To decrease the work load of the receiving module, use a sufficiently high UART baud rate at the receiving device and slow advertising intervals at the sending devices.



If the reception of beacons is configured, active scanning is performed which increases the current consumption.

10.11.1. Example 1

Set the Beacon flags to 0x04 using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 14. Thus when an advertising packet with WE SPP-like UUID is received, a CMD_RSSI_IND message is printed.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x0E	0x04	0x1B

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.11.2. Example 2

Request the Beacon flags of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 14

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x0E	0x1D

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 3, which means that the reception of Beacons is enabled and double packets are filtered by the module.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x03	0x53

10.12. RF_AdvertisingTimeout: Modify the advertising timeout

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
7	RF_AdvertisingTimeout	0 (infinite), 1 - 650	0	read/write	2

This parameter defines the time in seconds after which the advertising of the module stops. If no peer connects before this timeout, advertising stops and the module goes to system-off mode. If the RF_AdvertisingTimeout is set to 0, the module advertises infinitely.



To ensure that the module sends a sufficient amount of advertising packets per RF_AdvertisingTimeout, please also check the RF_ScanTiming parameter, which defines the frequency of advertising packets.

10.12.1. Example 1

Set the advertising timeout parameter to 0x00 0xB4 (180s) using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 7.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x07	0xB4 0x00	0xA3

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.12.2. Example 2

Request the advertising timeout of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 7

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x07	0x14

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x00 0x00 = 0s, which indicates indefinite advertising.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x51

10.13. RF_AdvertisingFlags: Configure the advertising packet

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
29	RF_AdvertisingFlags	0,1,2	0	read/write	1

The user setting RF_AdvertisingFlags specifies the content of the advertising packet.

Bit no.	Description	
1 : 0	Define the content of the advertising packet	
	0x0	Command mode: Advertising packet contains 5 bytes device name RF_DeviceName and the TX power and the UUID.
		Peripheral only mode: Advertising packet contains 8 bytes device name generated by the FS_BTMAC (A-123456 in case the FS_BTMAC is 0x0018DA123456) and the UUID.
	0x1	Advertising packet contains 8 bytes device name RF_DeviceName and the UUID.
	0x2	Advertising packet contains 26 bytes device name RF_DeviceName and the TX power (only in case the RF_DeviceName is equal or lower than 23 bytes). The UUID is part of the scan response packet, that can be only received by an active scan (see user settings RF_ScanFlags). Using this option, the transmission of beacons is not more supported.
	Others	Reserved.
7 : 2	Reserved.	

Table 70: Advertising packet configuration flags

10.13.1. Example 1

Set the advertising flags to 1 such that command mode and peripheral only mode use the same advertising packet content using the CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 29

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x1D	0x01	0x0D

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.13.2. Example 2

Request the RF_AdvertisingFlags using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 29:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x1D	0x0E

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x00.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x00	0x50

10.14. RF_ScanFactor: Modify the scan factor

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
10	RF_ScanFactor	1 - 10	2	read/write	1

This parameter defines the factor between the scan window and the scan interval. See RF_ScanTiming for more information.

Example: Let's assume that the scan window is 50 ms, the RF_ScanFactor is 3, then the module scans for 50 ms on a fixed channel, enters a suspend mode (system-on mode) for 100 ms (3×50 ms - 50 ms), switches the channel, again scans for 50 ms and so on. The larger the RF_ScanFactor, the less time the module scans and thus the less power is consumed, but also the more difficult it is to detect other Bluetooth® LE devices on air.

10.14.1. Example 1

Set the scan factor to 0x03 using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 10.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x0A	0x03	0x18

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.14.2. Example 2

Request the scan factor of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 10

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x0A	0x19

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 2.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x02	0x52

10.15. RF_ScanTiming: Modify the scan timing

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
9	RF_ScanTiming	0 - 11	1	read/write	1

The RF_ScanTiming enables the possibility to configure the timing behavior of the module's RF interface during advertising and scanning state. Using this parameter several predefined configurations can be chosen, which include timing parameters, such as the frequency of advertising packets and the length of a scan window.

The choice of the RF_ScanTiming primarily affects the latency of device detection on air as well as the current consumption. The lower the RF_ScanTiming, the faster the modules can find each other for communication, but also the more power will be consumed.

RF_ScanTiming	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8 ¹	9 ¹	10 ¹	11 ¹
Advertising interval [ms]	20	40	60	80	100	120	250	500	1000	2000	5000	10240
Scan window [ms]	25	50	80	100	120	150	312	600	1250	2500	6250	10240
Scan interval [ms]	Defined by the RF_ScanFactor.											
Connection setup timeout [s]	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	4	5	10	20	35
Current consumption	High	...										Low

Further information:

- In ACTION_SCANNING mode, the scan interval defines the time after which the module switches channel to detect other Bluetooth® LE devices in range. See also RF_ScanFactor.
- In ACTION_SCANNING mode, the scan window defines the section of the scan interval, where the module is scanning. During the remaining time, the module enters a suspend mode (system-on mode). See also RF_ScanFactor.
- In ACTION_IDLE mode, the advertising interval defines the time after which the module periodically sends its advertising packet. In between, the module enters a suspend mode (system-on mode).
- The connection setup timeout defines the time after which a connection request has to be answered by the peripheral.

¹Mainly suitable for transmitting data using Beacons without consuming much energy.



Please ensure that all members of a network support the same advertising and scan timing parameters.



To ensure that the module is allowed to send a sufficient amount of advertising packets, please also check the RF_AdvertisingTimeout parameter.

10.15.1. Example 1

Set the scan timing parameter to 0x00 using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 9.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x09	0x00	0x18

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.15.2. Example 2

Request the scan timing parameter of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 9

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x09	0x1A

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 4.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x04	0x54

10.16. RF_ConnectionTiming: Modify the connection timing

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
8	RF_ConnectionTiming	0 - 12	2	read/write	1

The RF_ConnectionTiming enables the possibility to configure the timing behavior of the module's RF interface during an established connection. Using this parameter several predefined configurations can be chosen, which include the minimum and maximum connection interval, as well as the connection supervision timeout.

The choice of the RF_ConnectionTiming primarily determines how rapidly the connection is established and data is transmitted. The lower the RF_ConnectionTiming, the more frequently the connected devices communicate with each other and thus, the more power is consumed.

RF_ConnectionTiming	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Minimum connection interval [ms]	7.5	7.5	15	30	45	100	195	750	2000
Maximum connection interval [ms]	7.5	30	75	100	250	500	1000	1995	4000
Connection supervision timeout [s]	4	4	4	4	4	4	6	6	25

RF_ConnectionTiming	9	10	11	12
Minimum connection interval [ms]	7.5	11.25	15	15
Maximum connection interval [ms]	11.25	20	15	30
Connection supervision timeout [s]	4	4	4	4



Please note that the smallest minimum connection interval supported by Android is 11.25 ms. Thus profile 0 cannot be used on Android devices. Further note that iOS supports only profiles, where its minimum connection interval is 15 ms or a multiple of it.

Further information:

- The minimum and maximum connection interval parameters specify the borders of the connection interval as determined in the negotiation procedure between the central and the peripheral during connection setup. The connection interval defines the frequency of communication during connection setup and data transmission. If a Proteus-III module A (central) connects to a Proteus-III module B (peripheral), the connection interval settings of the central are used for connection setup. If both modules have different connection

interval settings the peripheral requests the central to accept the peripheral's settings after 5s. The central accepts these settings, and thus the peripheral's connection interval is used.

If now another Bluetooth® LE device (e.g. a smart phone) connects as central to a Proteus-III module (peripheral) and the connection interval settings do not coincide, the Proteus-III requests the smart phone to accept its settings after 5s. If the cell phone does not accept the settings, it will be requested a further 3 times with a delay of 10s. If the peripheral's settings request have been rejected in all cases the connection will be shut down. If the smart phone itself requests to update the connection interval of the Proteus-III, the module accepts the request. Reversely, if a Proteus-III (central) connects to another Bluetooth® LE device (peripheral) and the connection interval settings do not coincide, the Proteus-III accepts all requests of the peripheral to update the connection parameter settings.

- The connection supervision timeout defines the time after which an already established connection is considered as lost, when no further communication has occurred.



Please ensure that all members (Proteus-III, cell phones and other Bluetooth® LE devices) of a network use the same connection timing parameters to avoid connection problems and changes of the connection interval during an opened connection.



Please check the minimum connection interval that is supported by iOS. Former iOS devices do not support connection intervals shorter than 30 ms!

10.16.1. Example 1

Set the connection timing parameter to 0x00 using `CMD_SET_REQ` with settings index 8.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x08	0x00	0x19

Response `CMD_SET_CNF`: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.16.2. Example 2

Request the connection timing parameter of the module using `CMD_GET_REQ` with settings index 8

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x08	0x1B

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 1.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x01	0x51

10.17. RF_TXPower: Modify the output power

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
17	RF_TXPower	See description	8	read/write	1

This setting determines the output power in dBm of the module. The value has to be entered in hexadecimal and as two's complement. The permissible values are listed in the following table.

Permissible values							
Decimal [dBm]	-40	-20	-16	-12	-8	-4	0
Two's complement, hexadecimal	0xD8	0xEC	0xF0	0xF4	0xF8	0xFC	0x00

Decimal [dBm]	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Two's complement, hexadecimal	0x02	0x03	0x04	0x05	0x06	0x07	0x08

10.17.1. Example 1

Set the output power of the module to -8 dBm, which is 0xF8 in two's complement notation, using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 17

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x11	0xF8	0xF8

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.17.2. Example 2

Request the output power of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 17

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x11	0x02

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x04 = 4 dBm

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x04	0x54

10.18. RF_SPPBaseUUID: Configure the SPP base UUID

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
26	RF_SPPBaseUUID	See description	0x6E400000C352 11E5953D0002 A5D5C51B	read/write	16

Set the base UUID of the WE SPP-like profile. For more information about the UUID definition, please refer to chapter 14.2.



Please note that the UUID 0xFB349B5F8000008000100000xxxx0000 (0000xxxx-0000-1000-8000-00805f9b34fb) is reserved for 16 Bit UUIDs and must not be used here.

10.18.1. Example 1

Set the base UUID to 0xEFEEEDEC-EBEA-E9E8-E7E6-E5E4E3E2E1E0 using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 26

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x11 0x00	0x1A	0xE0 0xE1 0xE2 0xE3 0xE4 0xE5 0xE6 0xE7 0xE8 0xE9 0xEA 0xEB 0xEC 0xED 0xEE 0xEF	0x18

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.18.2. Example 2

Request the base UUID of the module using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x1A	0x09

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x6E400000-C352-11E5-953D-0002A5D5C51B.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x11 0x00	0x00	0x1B 0xC5 0xD5 0xA5 0x02 0x00 0x3D 0x95 0xE5 0x11 0x52 0xC3 0x00 0x00 0x40 0x6E	0x0C

10.19. RF_SPPServiceUUID: Configure the SPP service UUID

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
32	RF_SPPServiceUUID	See description	0x0001	read/write	2

Set the service UUID of the WE SPP-like profile. For more information about the UUID definition, please refer to chapter 14.2.

The service UUID can be every value, but must be different from RF_SPPTXUUID and RF_SPPRXUUID.

10.19.1. Example 1

Set the service UUID to 0x1122 using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 32

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x20	0x22 0x11	0x03

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.19.2. Example 2

Request the service UUID of the module using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x20	0x33

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x1234.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x34 0x12	0x77

10.20. RF_SPPRXUUID: Configure the SPP RX UUID

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
33	RF_SPPRXUUID	See description	0x0002	read/write	2

Set the RX UUID of the WE SPP-like profile. For more information about the UUID definition, please refer to chapter 14.2.



The RX UUID can be every value, but must be different from RF_SPPServiceUUID and RF_SPPTXUUID.

10.20.1. Example 1

Set the RX UUID to 0x1122 using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 33

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x21	0x22 0x11	0x02

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.20.2. Example 2

Request the service UUID of the module using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x21	0x32

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x1234.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x34 0x12	0x77

10.21. RF_SPPTXUUID: Configure the SPP TX UUID

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
34	RF_SPPTXUUID	See description	0x0003	read/write	2

Set the TX UUID of the WE SPP-like profile. For more information about the UUID definition, please refer to chapter 14.2.



The TX UUID can be every value, but must be different from RF_SPPServiceUUID and RF_SPPRXUUID.

10.21.1. Example 1

Set the TX UUID to 0x1122 using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 34

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x22	0x22 0x11	0x01

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.21.2. Example 2

Request the service UUID of the module using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x22	0x31

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x1234.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x34 0x12	0x77

10.22. RF_Appearance: Configure the appearance of the device

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
25	RF_Appearance	0-65535	0	read/write	2

The user setting RF_Appearance specifies the appearance of the Bluetooth® devices. It's a 2 Byte field defined by the Bluetooth® SIG. Please check the Bluetooth® assigned numbers [6].

10.22.1. Example 1

Set the appearance to "Generic computer" (0x0080) using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 25

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x19	0x80 0x00	0x89

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.22.2. Example 2

Request the RF_Appearance using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x19	0x0A

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x0000, meaning that the appearance is unknown.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x51

10.23. UART_ConfigIndex: Modify the UART speed

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
11	UART_ConfigIndex	See description	22	read/write	1

This parameter defines the baud rate used by the module's UART. The permissible values are listed in the following table. If flow control is enabled the pins /RTS and /CTS are used.

UART_ConfigIndex	Rate [Baud]	Real rate [Baud]	Flow control	Parity
0	1200	1205	no	none
1	1200	1205	yes	none
2	2400	2396	no	none
3	2400	2396	yes	none
4	4800	4808	no	none
5	4800	4808	yes	none
6	9600	9598	no	none
7	9600	9598	yes	none
8	14400	14414	no	none
9	14400	14414	yes	none
10	19200	19208	no	none
11	19200	19208	yes	none
12	28800	28829	no	none
13	28800	28829	yes	none
14	38400	38462	no	none
15	38400	38462	yes	none
16	56000	55944	no	none
17	56000	55944	yes	none
18	57600	57762	no	none
19	57600	57762	yes	none
20	76800	76923	no	none
21	76800	76923	yes	none
22	115200	115942	no	none
23	115200	115942	yes	none
25	230400	231884	yes	none
27	250000	250000	yes	none
29	460800	470588	yes	none
31	921600	941176	yes	none

33	1000000	1000000	yes	none
64	1200	1205	no	even
65	1200	1205	yes	even
66	2400	2396	no	even
67	2400	2396	yes	even
68	4800	4808	no	even
69	4800	4808	yes	even
70	9600	9598	no	even
71	9600	9598	yes	even
72	14400	14414	no	even
73	14400	14414	yes	even
74	19200	19208	no	even
75	19200	19208	yes	even
76	28800	28829	no	even
77	28800	28829	yes	even
78	38400	38462	no	even
79	38400	38462	yes	even
80	56000	55944	no	even
81	56000	55944	yes	even
82	57600	57762	no	even
83	57600	57762	yes	even
84	76800	76923	no	even
85	76800	76923	yes	even
86	115200	115942	no	even
87	115200	115942	yes	even
89	230400	231884	yes	even
91	250000	250000	yes	even
93	460800	470588	yes	even
95	921600	941176	yes	even
97	1000000	1000000	yes	even



After changing the baud rate using the `CMD_SET_REQ` the module restarts using the new baud rate. Therefore don't forget to update the baud rate of the connected host to be able to further use the module's UART.



Please note that due to the HF-activity of the chip, single Bytes on the UART can get lost, when using a very fast UART data rate. To avoid loosing single bytes, please enable the UART flow control.

10.23.1. Example 1

Set the baud rate index to 0x1F (921600 Baud with flow control and parity none) using `CMD_SET_REQ` with settings index 11

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x0B	0x1F	0x05

Response `CMD_SET_CNF`: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.23.2. Example 2

Request the baud rate index of the module using `CMD_GET_REQ` with settings index 11

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x0B	0x18

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the value 0x16, which equals 115200 Baud without flow control and parity none.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x16	0x46

10.24. UART_TransparentTimeout: Modify the transparent mode timeout

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
36	UART_TransparentTimeout	2 - 255	10	read/write	1

This parameter defines the time in milliseconds after which the module starts transmitting the received UART data via radio, if no new data has been received for that time.

10.24.1. Example 1

Set the timeout parameter to 0x64 (100 ms) using `CMD_SET_REQ` with settings index 36.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x24	0x64	0x51

Response `CMD_SET_CNF`: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.24.2. Example 2

Request the timeout of the module using `CMD_GET_REQ` with settings index 36

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x24	0x37

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the value 0x0A = 10 ms.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x0A	0x5A

10.25. UART_TransparentMaxPayload: Modify the transparent mode max payload

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
37	UART_TransparentMaxPayload	1 - 1015	1015	read/write	2

This parameter defines the number of bytes after which the module starts the radio transmission.

10.25.1. Example 1

Set the maximum payload parameter to 0x64 (100) using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 37.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x25	0x00 0x64	0x51

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.25.2. Example 2

Request the maximum payload of the module using CMD_GET_REQ with settings index 37.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x25	0x36

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x000A = 10.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x0A 0x00	0x5B

10.26. UART_TransparentETX: Modify the transparent ETX characters

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
5	UART_TransparentETX	-	0x0D0A	read/write	2

Depending on the parameter `UART_TransparentETXConfig`, this parameter defines the ETX characters used to trigger radio transmission, when the specified ETX characters have been received and detected on the UART.

10.26.1. Example 1

Set the ETX to 0x1122 using `CMD_SET_REQ` with settings index 5.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x05	0x11 0x22	0x26

Response `CMD_SET_CNF`: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.26.2. Example 2

Request the ETX characters of the module using `CMD_GET_REQ` with settings index 5.

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x05	0x16

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the value 0x0D 0x0A.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x0D 0x0A	0x56

10.27. UART_TransparentETXConfig: Configure the usage of the ETX in transparent mode

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
6	UART_TransparentETXConfig	See description	0	read/write	1

The user setting UART_TransparentETXConfig specifies which ETX triggers are used in transparent mode.

Bit no.	Description		
1 : 0	Configuration mask		
	0x0	No ETX	ETX trigger is disabled.
	0x1	1 ETX	One ETX character will be used.
	0x2	2 ETX	Two ETX characters will be used.
2	TRANSP_REMOVE_ETX: If this Bit is set, the ETX characters will be removed from the data stream before transmitting it via radio.		
3	Reserved		

10.27.1. Example 1

Enable the 2 character ETX using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 6

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x06	0x02	0x15

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.27.2. Example 2

Request the UART_TransparentETXConfig using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x06	0x15

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x06, meaning that a 2 character ETX trigger is enabled, and the ETX characters are removed from byte stream.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x06	0x56

10.28. RF_CompanyIdentifier: Configure the company identifier of the device

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
35	RF_CompanyIdentifier	0-65535	0x031A	read/write	2

The user setting RF_CompanyIdentifier specifies the company identifier of the Proteus-III. It's a 2 Byte field defined by the Bluetooth® SIG, which is used in the manufacturer specific fields of the advertising packet (see CMD_SETBEACON_REQ). Please check the Bluetooth® assigned numbers [6].

10.28.1. Example 1

Set the company id to "Motorola" (0x0008) using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 35

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x23	0x08 0x00	0x3B

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.28.2. Example 2

Request the RF_CompanyIdentifier using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x23	0x30

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x031A (Würth Elektronik eisOS).

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x1A 0x03	0x48

10.29. CFG_Flags: Configure the module

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
28	CFG_Flags	See description	0	read/write	2

The user setting CFG_Flags specifies various module features.

Bit no.	Name	Description
0	High throughput mode	Set this Bit to 1 to enable the high throughput mode.
1	Long range connection mode	Set this Bit to 1 to enable the mode using the LE Coded mode during connection setup.
2	GPIO remote config.	Set this Bit to 1 to block the GPIO configuration via remote device.
4	Disconnect on mismatch	Set this Bit to 1 to disconnect in case the central device does not respect the peripheral's connection interval.
3, 5-15	Reserved	Do not modify.



The high throughput mode and its usage is described in the corresponding Proteus-III application note.

10.29.1. Example 1

Enable the high throughput mode using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 28

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x03 0x00	0x1C	0x01 0x00	0x0D

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.29.2. Example 2

Request the CFG_Flags using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x1C	0x0F

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x00, meaning that all of the specified features are disabled.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x03 0x00	0x00	0x00 0x00	0x51

10.30. DIS_ManufacturerName: Configure the manufacturer name

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
20	DIS_ManufacturerName	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-64

The user setting DIS_ManufacturerName specifies the content of the manufacturer name field of the Device Information Service. The permissible characters are in the range of 0x20 - 0x7E which are special characters (see ASCII table), alphabetic characters (a-z and A-Z), numbers (0-9) and whitespace.



To add the content of the DIS_ManufacturerName to the DIS profile, please set the corresponding Bit in the DIS_Flags.

10.30.1. Example 1

Set the manufacturer name to "Manufacturer1" using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 20

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x0E 0x00	0x14	0x4D 0x61 0x6E 0x75 0x66 0x61 0x63 0x74 0x75 0x72 0x65 0x72 0x31	0x0F

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.30.2. Example 2

Request the manufacturer name of the DIS profile using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x14	0x07

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value "Default".

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x08 0x00	0x00	0x44 0x65 0x66 0x61 0x75 0x6C 0x74	0x11

10.31. DIS_ModelNumber: Configure the model number

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
21	DIS_ModelNumber	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-64

The user setting `DIS_ModelNumber` specifies the content of the model number field of the Device Information Service. The permissible characters are in the range of 0x20 - 0x7E which are special characters (see ASCII table), alphabetic characters (a-z and A-Z), numbers (0-9) and whitespace.



To add the content of the `DIS_ModelNumber` to the DIS profile, please set the corresponding Bit in the `DIS_Flags`.

10.31.1. Example 1

Set the model number to "Model1" using `CMD_SET_REQ` with settings index 21

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x07 0x00	0x15	0x4D 0x6F 0x64 0x65 0x6C 0x31	0x7F

Response `CMD_SET_CNF`: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.31.2. Example 2

Request the model number of the DIS profile using `CMD_GET_REQ`:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x15	0x06

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the value "Default".

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x08 0x00	0x00	0x44 0x65 0x66 0x61 0x75 0x6C 0x74	0x11

10.32. DIS_SerialNumber: Configure the serial number

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
22	DIS_SerialNumber	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-64

The user setting DIS_SerialNumber specifies the content of the serial number field of the Device Information Service. The permissible characters are in the range of 0x20 - 0x7E which are special characters (see ASCII table), alphabetic characters (a-z and A-Z), numbers (0-9) and whitespace.



To add the content of the DIS_SerialNumber to the DIS profile, please set the corresponding Bit in the DIS_Flags.

10.32.1. Example 1

Set the serial number to "1.2.3" using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 22

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x06 0x00	0x16	0x31 0x2E 0x32 0x2E 0x33	0x33

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.32.2. Example 2

Request the serial number of the DIS profile using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x16	0x05

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value "Default".

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x08 0x00	0x00	0x44 0x65 0x66 0x61 0x75 0x6C 0x74	0x11

10.33. DIS_HWVersion: Configure the HW version

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
23	DIS_HWVersion	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-16

The user setting `DIS_HWVersion` specifies the content of the hardware version field of the Device Information Service. The permissible characters are in the range of 0x20 - 0x7E which are special characters (see ASCII table), alphabetic characters (a-z and A-Z), numbers (0-9) and whitespace.



To add the content of the `DIS_HWVersion` to the DIS profile, please set the corresponding Bit in the `DIS_Flags`.

10.33.1. Example 1

Set the hardware version to "1.2.3" using `CMD_SET_REQ` with settings index 23

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x06 0x00	0x17	0x31 0x2E 0x32 0x2E 0x33	0x32

Response `CMD_SET_CNF`: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.33.2. Example 2

Request the hardware version of the DIS profile using `CMD_GET_REQ`:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x17	0x04

Response `CMD_GET_CNF`: Successfully read out the value "Default".

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x08 0x00	0x00	0x44 0x65 0x66 0x61 0x75 0x6C 0x74	0x11

10.34. DIS_SWVersion: Configure the SW version

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
24	DIS_SWVersion	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-16

The user setting DIS_SWVersion specifies the content of the software version field of the Device Information Service. The permissible characters are in the range of 0x20 - 0x7E which are special characters (see ASCII table), alphabetic characters (a-z and A-Z), numbers (0-9) and whitespace.



To add the content of the DIS_SWVersion to the DIS profile, please set the corresponding Bit in the DIS_Flags.

10.34.1. Example 1

Set the software version to "1.2.3" using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 24

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x06 0x00	0x18	0x31 0x2E 0x32 0x2E 0x33	0x3D

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.34.2. Example 2

Request the software version of the DIS profile using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x18	0x0B

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value "Default".

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x08 0x00	0x00	0x44 0x65 0x66 0x61 0x75 0x6C 0x74	0x11

10.35. DIS_Flags: Configure the device information service

Settings index	Designation	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
19	DIS_Flags	0-255	0	read/write	1

The user setting DIS_Flags specifies the content of the Device Information Service. To add a specific field, like DIS_ModelNumber to the Device Information Service, the corresponding Bit has to be set in the DIS_Flags.

Bit no.	Description
0	Set this Bit to 1 to add the DIS_ManufacturerName to the Device Information Service.
1	Set this Bit to 1 to add the DIS_ModelNumber to the Device Information Service.
2	Set this Bit to 1 to add the DIS_SerialNumber to the Device Information Service.
3	Set this Bit to 1 to add the DIS_HWVersion to the Device Information Service.
4	Set this Bit to 1 to add the DIS_SWVersion to the Device Information Service.
5-7	Reserved.

10.35.1. Example 1

Add the manufacturer name and model number (Bit0|Bit1 = 0x03) to the Device Information Service using CMD_SET_REQ with settings index 19

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x11	0x02 0x00	0x13	0x03	0x01

Response CMD_SET_CNF: Successfully modified the setting.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	CS
0x02	0x51	0x01 0x00	0x00	0x52

10.35.2. Example 2

Request the DIS_Flags using CMD_GET_REQ:

Start signal	Command	Length	Settings index	CS
0x02	0x10	0x01 0x00	0x13	0x00

Response CMD_GET_CNF: Successfully read out the value 0x00, meaning that the Device Information Service is disabled, since no field was added.

Start signal	Command 0x40	Length	Status	Parameter	CS
0x02	0x50	0x02 0x00	0x00	0x00	0x50

Settings index	Designation	Summary	Permissible values	Default value	Permissions	Number of bytes
1	FS_FWVersion	Version of the firmware	-	-	read	3
2	RF_DeviceName	Name of the module	See description	"Prot3"	read/write	1-31
3	FS_MAC	MAC address of the module	-	-	read	6
4	FS_BTMAC	Bluetooth® LE conform MAC address of the module	-	-	read/write	6
5	UART_TransparentETX	ETX characters	See description	0x0D0A	read/write	2
6	UART_TransparentETXConfig	ETX configuration	See description	0	read/write	1
7	RF_AdvertisingTimeout	Time [s] after advertising stops. LSB first	0 (infinite), 1 - 65535	0	read/write	2
8	RF_ConnectionTiming	Module connection timing configuration	0 - 12	2	read/write	1
9	RF_ScanTiming	Module advertising and scanning timing configuration	0 - 11	1	read/write	1
10	RF_ScanFactor	Factor between scan interval and scan window	1 - 10	2	read/write	1
11	UART_ConfigIndex	Baud rate of the UART	See description	22	read/write	1
12	RF_SecFlags	Security settings of the module	See description	0	read/write	1
13	RF_ScanFlags	Scan settings of the module	See description	0	read/write	1
14	RF_BeaconFlags	Beacon settings of the module	See description	0	read/write	1
15	FS_DeviceInfo	Information about the chip	-	-	read	12
16	FS_SerialNumber	Serial number of the module	-	-	read	3
17	RF_TXPower	Output power [dBm] Two's complement	See description	8	read/write	1
18	RF_StaticPasskey	6 digit pass key	See description	"123123"	read/write	6
19	DIS_Flags	Flags for the DIS	0 - 255	0	read/write	1
20	DIS_ManufacturerName	Manufacturer name field of the DIS	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-64
21	DIS_ModelNumber	Model number field of the DIS	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-64
22	DIS_SerialNumber	Serial number field of the DIS	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-64

23	DIS_HWVersion	HW version field of the DIS	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-16
24	DIS_SWVersion	SW version field of the DIS	See description	"Default"	read/write	1-16
25	RF_Appearance	Appearance	0-65535	0	read/write	2
26	RF_SPPBaseUUID	Base UUID of the WE SPP-like profile	See description	See description	read/write	16
28	CFG_Flags	CFG Flags	See description	0	read/write	2
29	RF_AdvertisingFlags	Advertising Flags	0,1,2	0	read/write	1
32	RF_SPPServiceUUID	See description	See description	0x0001	read/write	2
33	RF_SPPRXUUID	See description	See description	0x0002	read/write	2
34	RF_SPPTXUUID	See description	See description	0x0003	read/write	2
35	RF_CompanyIdentifier	Company identifier	0-65535	0x031A	read/write	2
36	UART_TransparentTimeout	Transparent timeout	2 - 255	10	read/write	1
37	UART_TransparentMaxPayload	Transparent payload	1 - 1015	1015	read/write	2
44	RF_SecFlagsPerOnly	Security settings of the module (peripheral only mode only)	See description	11	read/write	1

Table 72: Table of settings

11. Timing parameters

11.1. Reset and sleep

After power-up, resetting the module or waking the module from sleep a `CMD_GETSTATE_CNF` is sent to the serial interface as soon as the module is ready for operation.

Description	Typ.	Unit
Ready after reset/sleep	77	ms

11.2. Bluetooth LE timing parameters

The timing parameters for sending advertising packets or scanning are determined by the user settings `RF_ScanTiming`, `RF_ScanFactor` and `RF_AdvertisingTimeout`. Using these settings, the advertising interval, the advertising timeout, the scan interval and the scan window can be configured. Furthermore, the user setting `RF_ConnectionTiming` allows to configure the timing parameters used during connection setup and connection retention, as well as the connection interval and the connection supervision timeout.

11.3. Connection establishment

The time needed to establish a connection sums up as the time needed to detect the selected peripheral on air and the time needed for connection parameter negotiation and service discovery.

Peripheral detection To establish a connection, the initiating device (central) waits for an advertising packet, which was sent by the peripheral to which it wants to connect to. As soon as such an advertising packet has been received, the central sends a connection request to the chosen peripheral. The time needed to receive this advertising packet strongly depends on the advertising interval of the peripheral as well as on the scan interval and scan window of the central (see `RF_ScanTiming`).

Connection parameter negotiation After the connection request has been sent the central and peripheral negotiate the timing and security parameters of the connection. To finish this procedure and discover the services of the peripheral several messages have to be sent, whereby only one is sent per connection interval (see `RF_ConnectionTiming`).

Connection type	Estimated number of exchanged messages	Negotiation time for a connection interval of 50 ms
Unsecured connection	12-14	600-700 ms
Secured connection using the pairing method	22-24	1100-1200 ms
Secured connection to already bonded device	19-20	950-1000 ms

Knowing the connection interval and the number of messages that will be sent, the time necessary to setup a connection can be estimated by multiplying the number of messages with the connection interval.



In case the Device Information Service is enabled, the number of messages and thus the time consumption of the connection setup may be increased.

11.4. Connection based data transmission

After connection has been setup, data can be transmitted using the `CMD_DATA_REQ`. It buffers the data in the module and sends it with the next connection interval event. As soon as the data has been transmitted successfully, a `CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP` is returned to the host. The time needed for this coincides with the connection interval that was negotiated during connection setup. The `RF_ConnectionTiming` parameter defines the minimum and maximum connection interval, which is supported by the module.

The following image shows the command sequence when sending data:

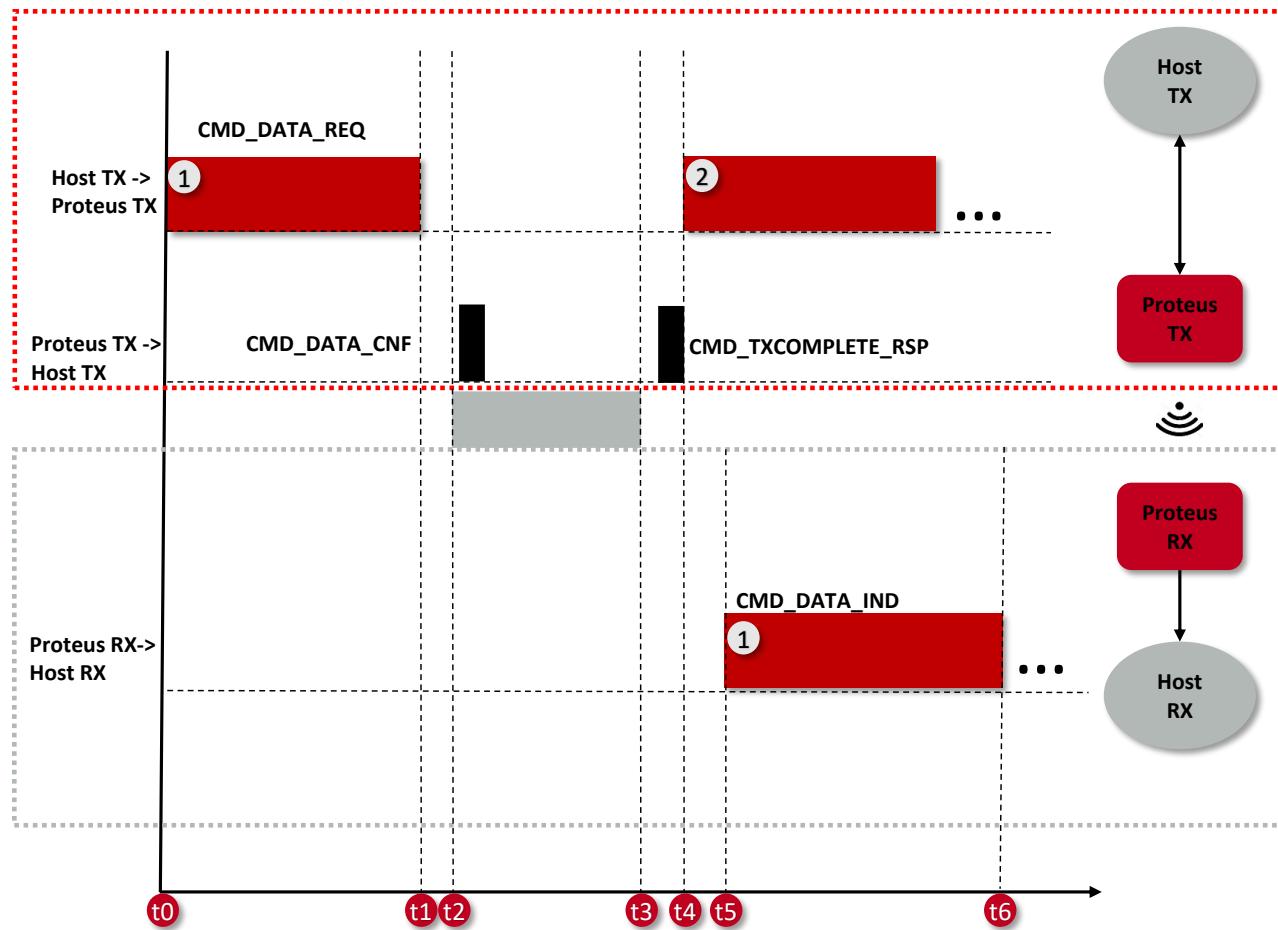


Figure 10: Command sequence when transmitting data

11.4.1. Maximum data throughput

The following table contains the measured maximum throughput values for user payload. The test setup is as follows:

- Two Proteus-III radio modules connected to a fast micro controller (STM32 on NUCLEO-L476RG)
- Radio mode as specified in the table below (125 kb/s (long range mode), 1 Mbit/s or 2 Mbit/s)
- Fastest connection interval of 7.5 ms (`RF_ConnectionTiming` equals 0)
- Fastest UART baud rate of 1000000 Baud (`UART_ConfigIndex` equals 33) with HW flow control
- High throughput mode to transmit 964 Bytes payload (i.e. 4 radio frames, each with 241 byte payload) per connection interval (Bit 0 of `CFG_Flags`)

Radio mode	t1-t0 [ms] (UART RX)	t4-t0 [ms] (Host TX Period)	t6-t5 [ms] (UART TX)	t6-t0 [ms] (End-to-end delay)	964/(t4-t0) [kByte/s] (Throughput)
125 kb/s	13.12	314.6	9.83	318.55	3.06
1 Mb/s	13.12	44.60	9.83	49.33	21.61
2 Mb/s	13.12	22.11	9.83	33.29	43.05

Table 73: Maximum throughput timings, packet error rate = 0%



Please note that data transmission to/from smart devices typically do not achieve this speed due to latency caused by the smart device and its software and apps or even missing hardware features such as Bluetooth® LE 5.0 full feature support.

12. Peripheral only mode

The Proteus-III implements a new feature that allows the easy integration of the Proteus-III Bluetooth® LE module to an already existing host. The peripheral only mode offers a plug and play installation without previous configuration of the Proteus-III. It is tailored for easy communication with mobile Bluetooth® LE devices like smart phones.

The peripheral only mode is a special operation mode, that uses the user settings and the peripheral functions of the normal mode described in the previous chapters. It has to be enabled during the module start-up and contains the following key features:

- Peripheral only functions: The Proteus-III only contains the functions of a peripheral device. Thus, it is advertising until another Bluetooth® LE enabled device connects to it. In this case, the UART of the Proteus-III is enabled, the *LED_2* pin shows that the channel is open and bidirectional data transmission can start. As soon as the connection is closed, the UART is disabled again to save power. Since all central functions are no longer valid, the module cannot initiate any connection or run scans.
- Transparent UART interface: The serial interface of the Proteus-III is no longer driven by commands. This means, when the UART of the module is enabled (i.e. only when a channel is open, indicated by both LEDs active), data sent to the UART is transmitted by the Proteus-III to the connected Bluetooth® LE enabled device. On the other hand, all data received by radio is sent from the Proteus-III to the connected host without additional header Bytes. The UART is only running, when a channel is open. Thus, power is saved during the advertising period. Depending on the configured connection interval, only one packet per interval is allowed to be transmitted. Since the commands of the command interface are no longer valid, a Proteus-III cannot be configured when running in peripheral only mode.
- Pairing: The default security mode is the static passkey pairing method (see `RF_SecFlagsPerOnly`), with the default key "123123". The bonding feature is enabled by default.

12.1. Reasons to use the peripheral only mode

The Proteus-III peripheral only mode equips custom applications with a Bluetooth® LE interface (to be accessible by other Bluetooth® LE devices) without installation effort.

To setup a connection to the Proteus-III in peripheral only mode the central device has to insert the Proteus-III's static passkey. As soon as the channel to a connected Bluetooth® LE central device is open, the *LED_2* pin switches on to signalize that data can be exchanged now. When the connection was shut down by the Bluetooth® LE central device, the *LED_2* pin switches off again.

Due to the transparent UART interface, data can be exchanged without additional headers. Furthermore, the peripheral only mode allows an energy efficient operation of the Bluetooth® LE interface, since the UART is only enabled when it is really used.

12.2. Restrictions

In peripheral only mode, it is not possible to use the security modes "Lesc pass key" and "Lesc numeric comparison", as these security features require to output the LESC key on the UART.

12.3. How to use the peripheral only mode

The peripheral only mode is enabled, when a digital HIGH level is present on the *MODE_1* pin during device start-up or reset (typ. duration of this phase is 77ms).

No configuration of the module is needed for this operating mode. The module shall be set to factory settings if reconfigured before so it uses the default user settings. In this case, the UART uses 115200 Baud 8n1 and static passkey pairing is used as authentication method.

If a configuration of the module is still needed (e.g. when another UART baud rate needs to be chosen), the module has to be started in normal mode and the `CMD_SET_REQ` may be used to update the user settings.

It is permitted to modify any user setting to change the behavior of the peripheral only mode.

12.4. More information

12.4.1. Radio

In factory state (default user settings) the following holds.

- In peripheral only mode a new 8-digit device name is automatically generated by the `FS_BTMAC`. In case of the `FS_BTMAC` equals 0x0018DA123456 the device name is "A-123456". This is a workaround for iOS, which does not allow access to the BTMAC value for received Bluetooth® frames be seen or used by apps.
- The content of the advertising packet differs from the content used in normal command mode. The TX power information block is not transmitted to allow the device name in the advertise packet to use 8 characters instead of 5 characters. If the app still detects "Prot3" in the scan the radio module is most likely not booted in to peripheral only mode.

See also the user setting `RF_AdvertisingFlags` to adapt the content of the advertising packet.

12.4.2. UART

- The data sent to the UART is buffered and packetized in the Proteus-III before it is send. There are different triggers causing transmission on the active Bluetooth® LE radio connection:
 - If the number of UART bytes exceeds a threshold that is the lowest value of either the `UART_TransparentMaxPayload` or the Bluetooth® LE packet payload that is active for the current connection (see below, value may change with each connection)
 - If UART IDLE state is detected, which will happen if the UART is idle for a time of two times `UART_TransparentTimeout` milliseconds, where 10ms is the user settings default value which results in the necessity of a 20ms gap in a UART data stream from the host to the module.
 - If the configured ETX characters (`UART_TransparentETX`) have been received on the UART and this trigger has been enabled (see `UART_TransparentETXConfig`).
- To enable a fast transmission of data packets a large MTU of the Bluetooth® LE connection is helpful. The Proteus-III supports up to 243 Bytes Bluetooth® LE packet payload (corresponding to a MTU of 247 Bytes), which may be negotiated by the central device

(using a MTU request). If no MTU request is requested by the connecting central device the value of 19 Bytes payload per Bluetooth® LE packet and connection interval as given by the Bluetooth® 4.0 standard is used (compatibility mode to Bluetooth® LE 4.0 devices). This value cannot be requested from the module in peripheral only mode and different connection partners (smart phones) may select different values inbetween the standard compliant range (19 to 243 byte). To harden your application it is recommended to require a smartphone / connection partner minimum feature set for the MTU value and the connection interval.

- The pin *BUSY* shall be used as a kind of flow control for the data transmission during the peripheral only mode. By default the pin level is LOW. As soon as the timeout (default: 20ms) was detected or the UART byte count threshold was reached, the pin switches to HIGH and data transmission starts via Bluetooth® LE. The pin switches LOW again, as soon as Bluetooth® LE data transmission has finished and the transmission of new data is feasible again. In case the pin is HIGH, no more data is accepted on the UART by the module. Any UART Data send by the host will not be recognized by the module and therefore not be send on the radio.

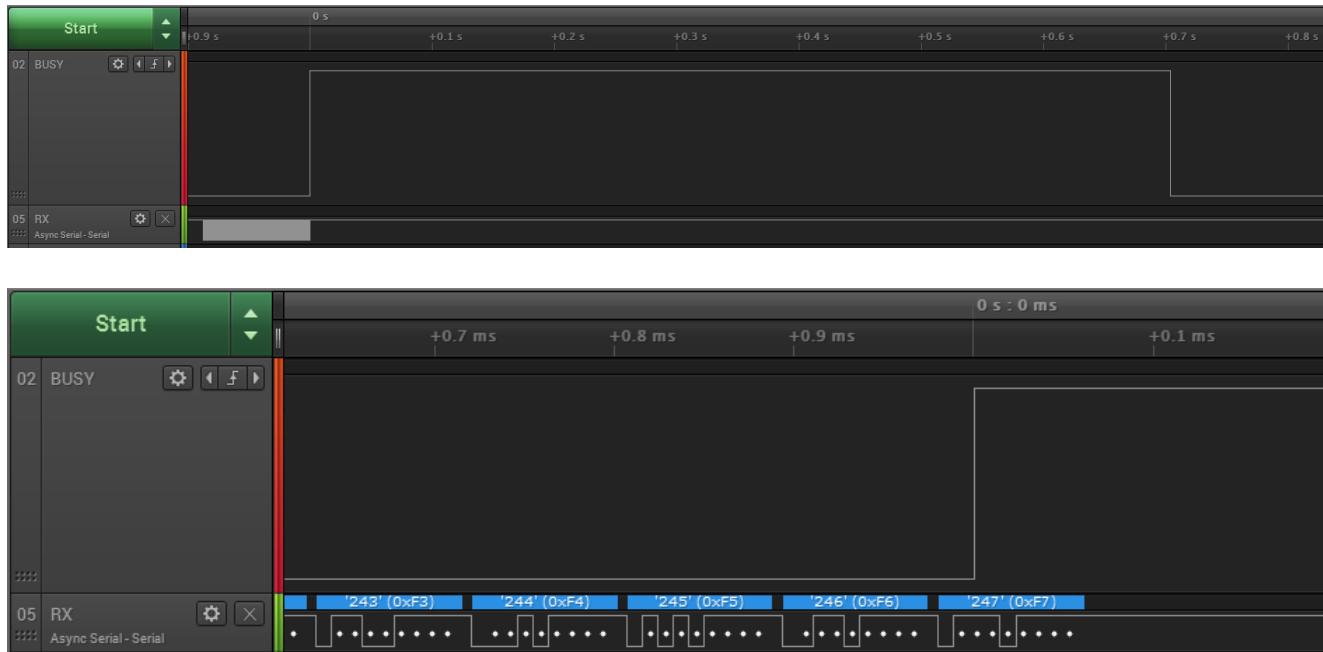


Figure 11: Switch of the *BUSY* pin when transmitting data

To use the signal on the *BUSY* pin as flow control on the host controller side, we recommend to use an OR gate to combine the */RTS* and *BUSY* pins' signals.

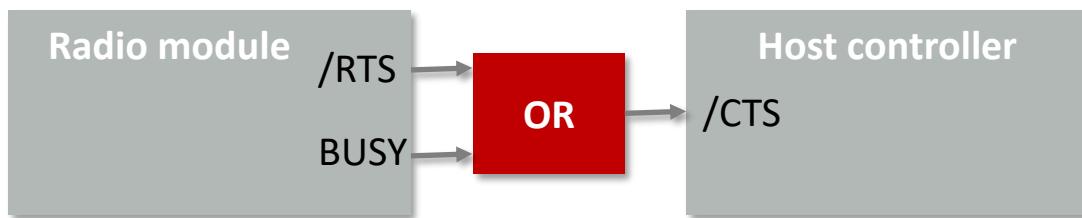
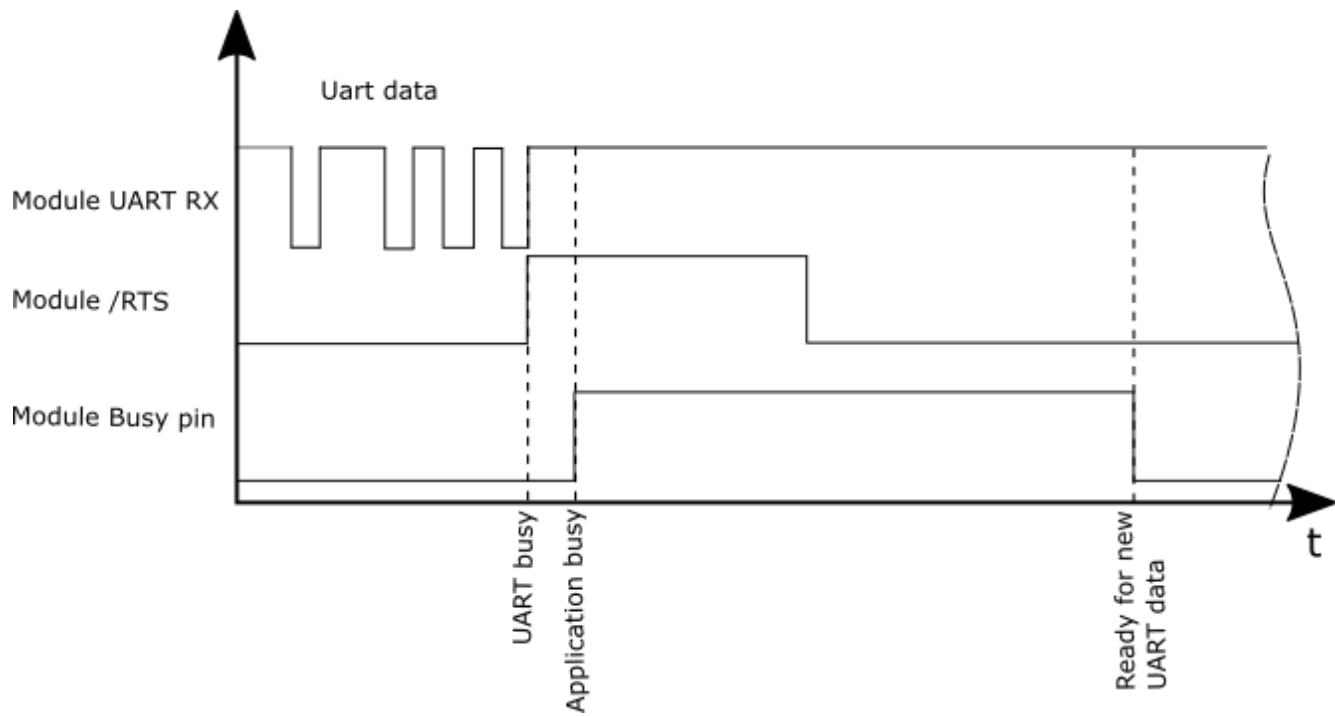


Figure 12: Handling the */RTS* and *BUSY* pin

13. Remote GPIO control

The Proteus-III allows to control free GPIOs via remote access. Chapter 9.7 contains the description of the necessary commands.

To use the remote GPIO control feature of the Proteus-III, the GPIOs of interest must be configured first. This can be done in two ways. Either by the local host (see figure 13), when the radio module is in idle mode (not connected via Bluetooth® LE), or via the connected remote device (see figure 14).

In case of the local host, it must send a `CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_REQ` command to the radio module via UART. In case of the remote device, it must setup a Bluetooth® LE connection to the remote device first and send a `CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ` command to the radio module via Bluetooth® LE afterwards.

The configuration is stored in flash memory, such that it is retained also after a device restart. It can be reset to default by using the `CMD_FACTORYRESET_REQ` command.

The configuration can be also read out using the respective commands, `CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READCONFIG_REQ` via local host or `CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READCONFIG_REQ` via remote device.

If the configuration has been done, the configured GPIOs can be controlled by the local host controller or by any remote device.

To control a GPIO via local host controller just send the respective commands, `CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_REQ` for setting GPIO output values (see figure 17), or `CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_REQ` for reading GPIO values (see figure 18). Each time the GPIOs are written via local host, the connected remote device is informed using a `CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_IND` message.

To control a GPIO via remote device, first setup a Bluetooth® LE connection to the radio module and send the respective commands, `CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_REQ` for setting GPIO output values (see figure 19), or `CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_REQ` for reading GPIO values (see figure 20). Each time the GPIOs are written via remote connection, the local host is informed using a `CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_IND` message.

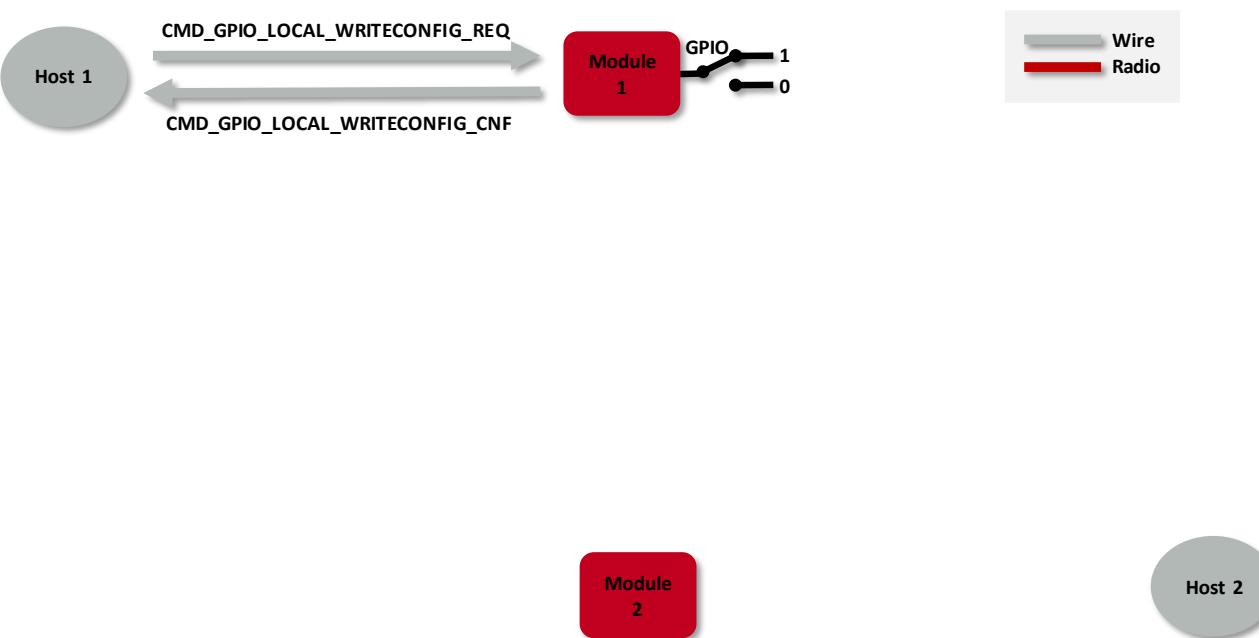


Figure 13: Configure the local GPIOs via local host

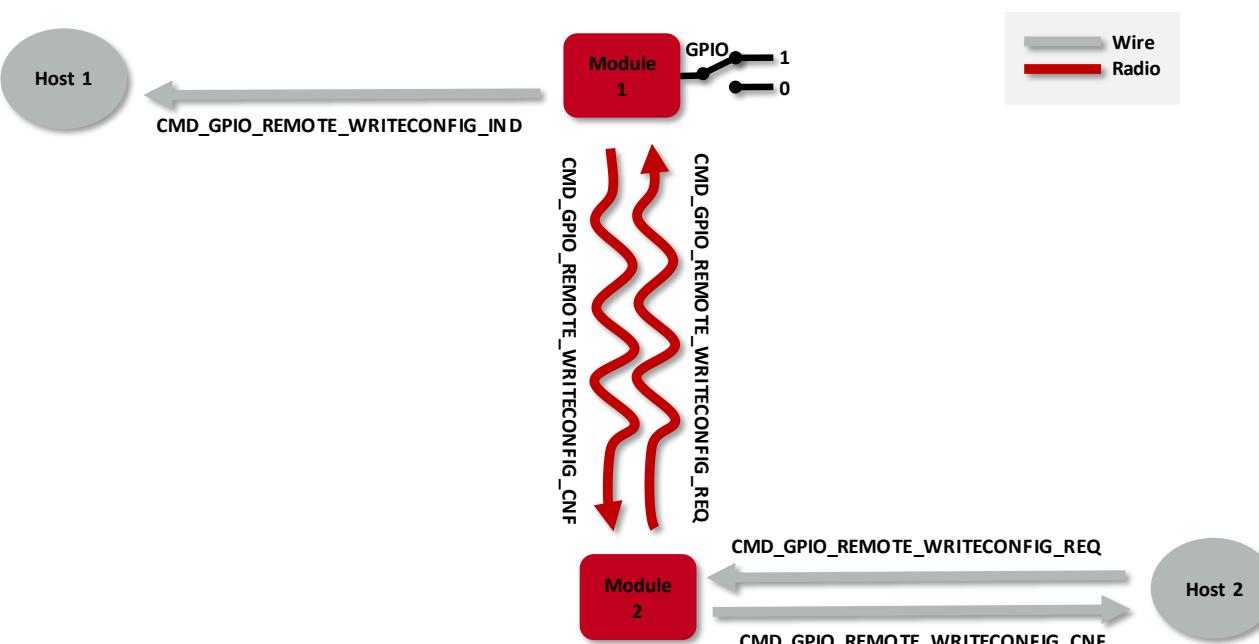


Figure 14: Configure the local GPIOs via remote device host

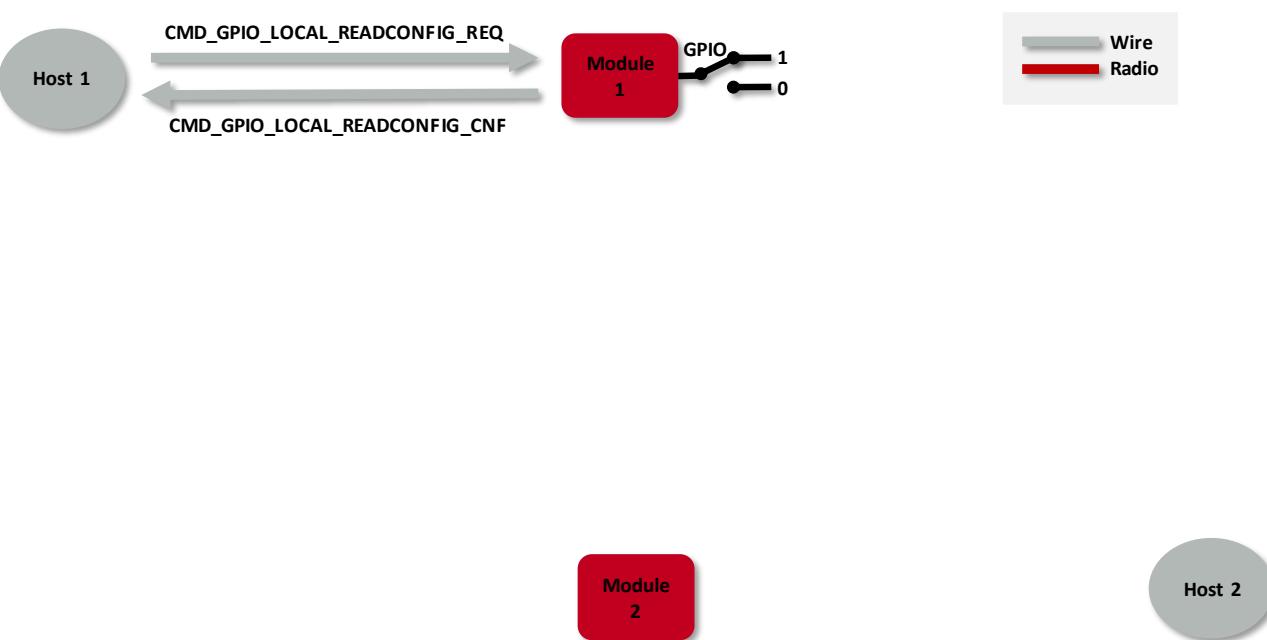


Figure 15: Read the configuration of the local GPIOs via local host

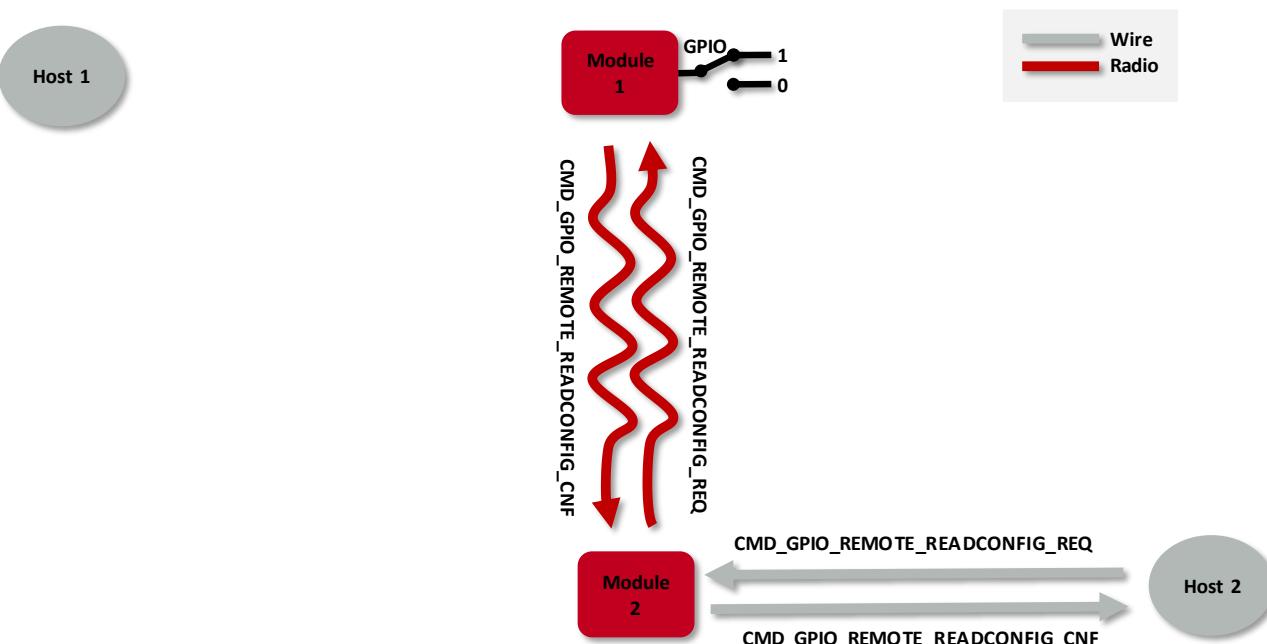


Figure 16: Read the configuration of the local GPIOs via remote device host

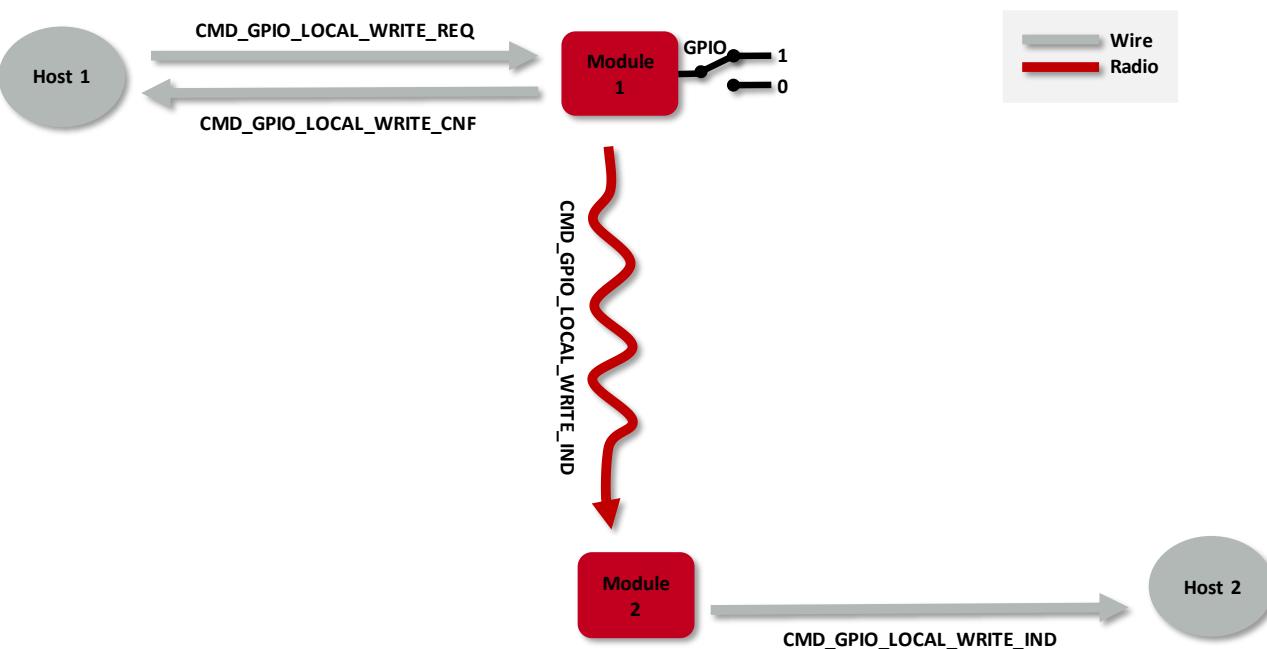


Figure 17: Set the output value of a GPIO via host controller

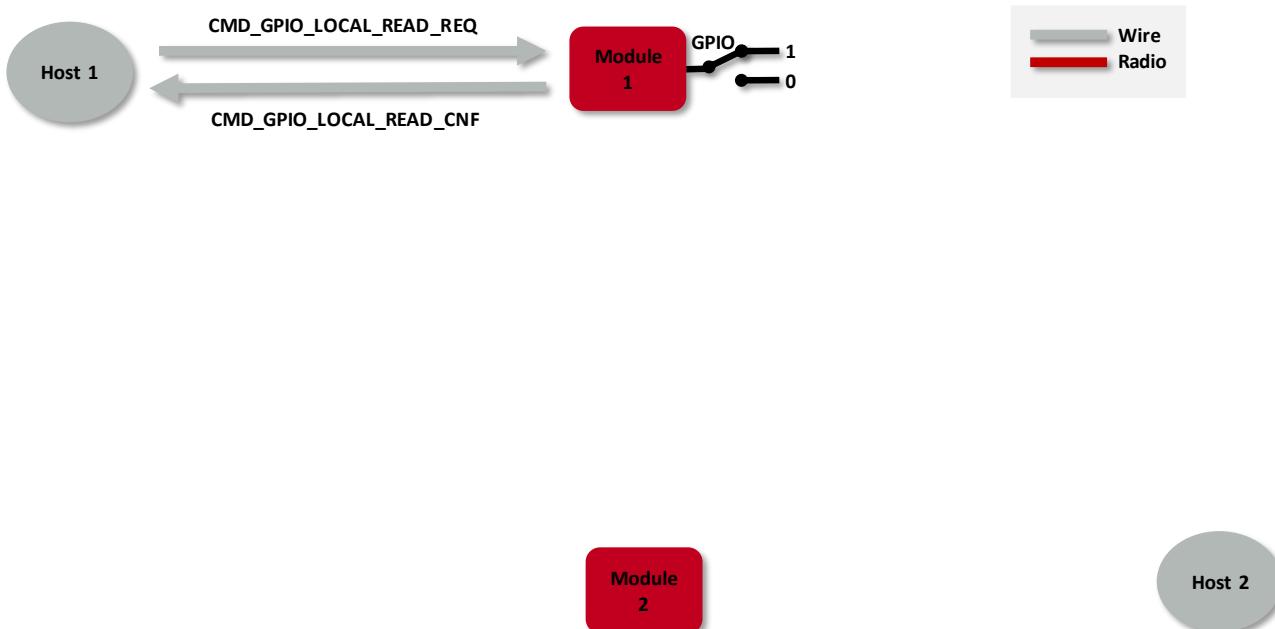


Figure 18: Read the input value of a GPIO via host controller

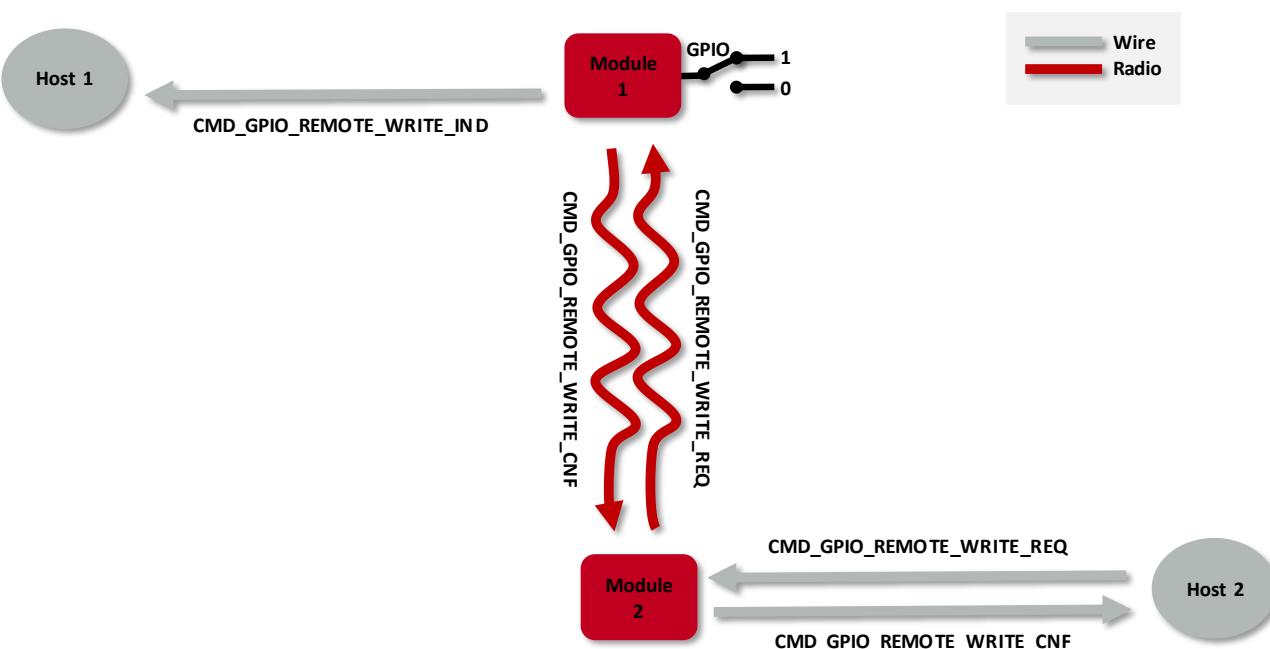


Figure 19: Set the output value of a GPIO via remote device

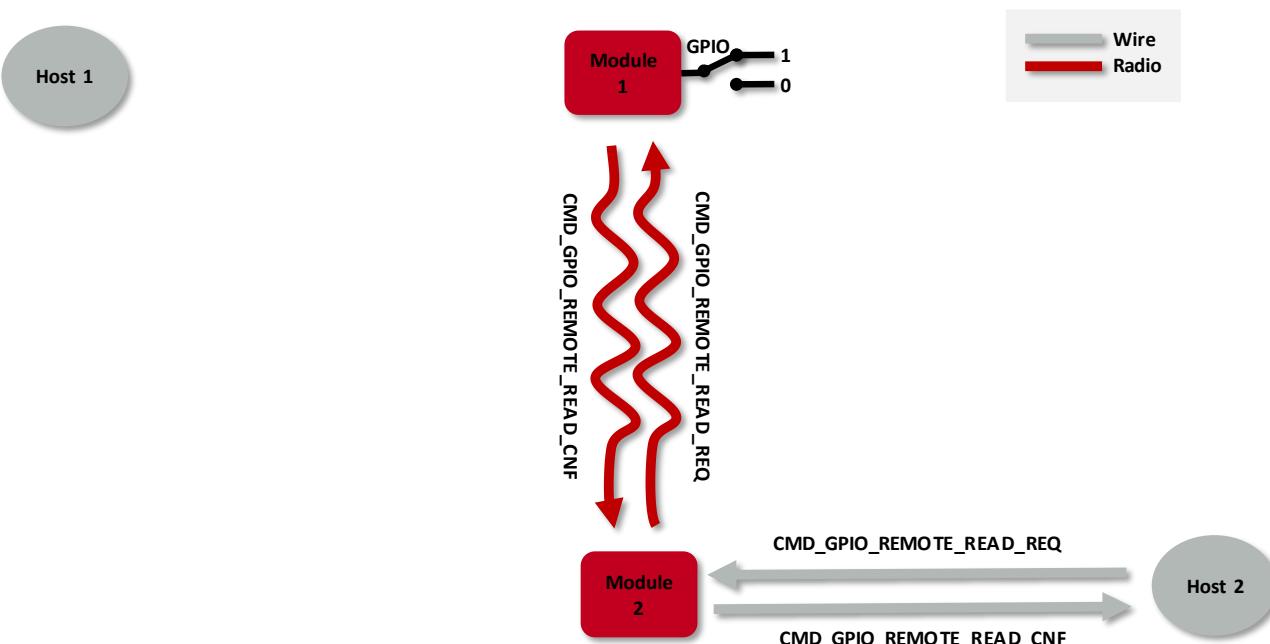


Figure 20: Read the input value of a GPIO via remote device

13.1. PWM

In case a GPIO shall run as PWM, the parameters "ratio" and "period" define its behavior. The parameter "period" defines the period of the PWM signal. The parameter "ratio" defines the ratio between on- and off-time. As an example, a ratio of 0x40 corresponds to 25% on-time and 75% off-time.

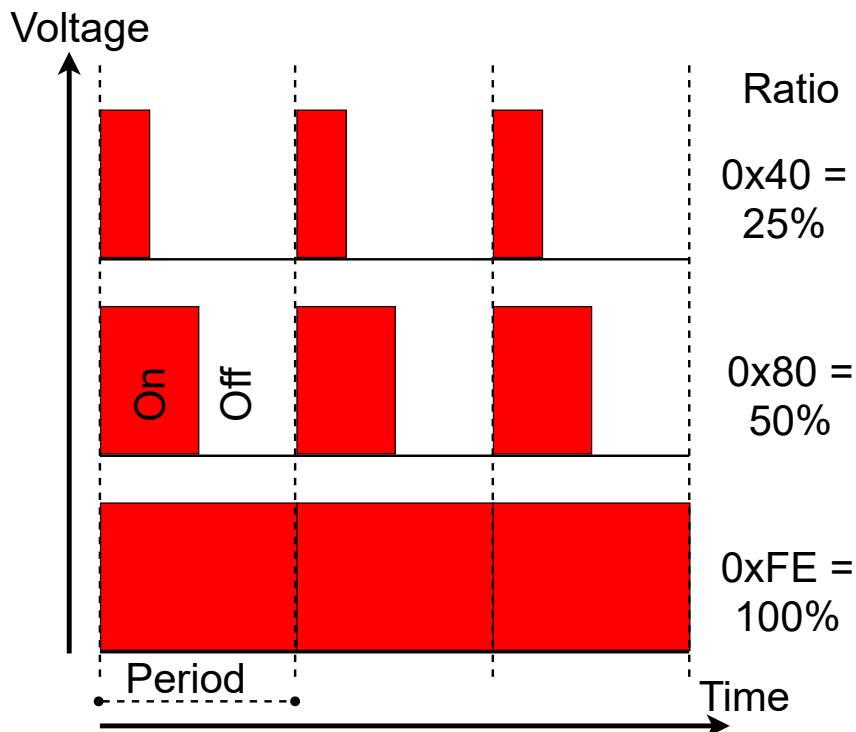
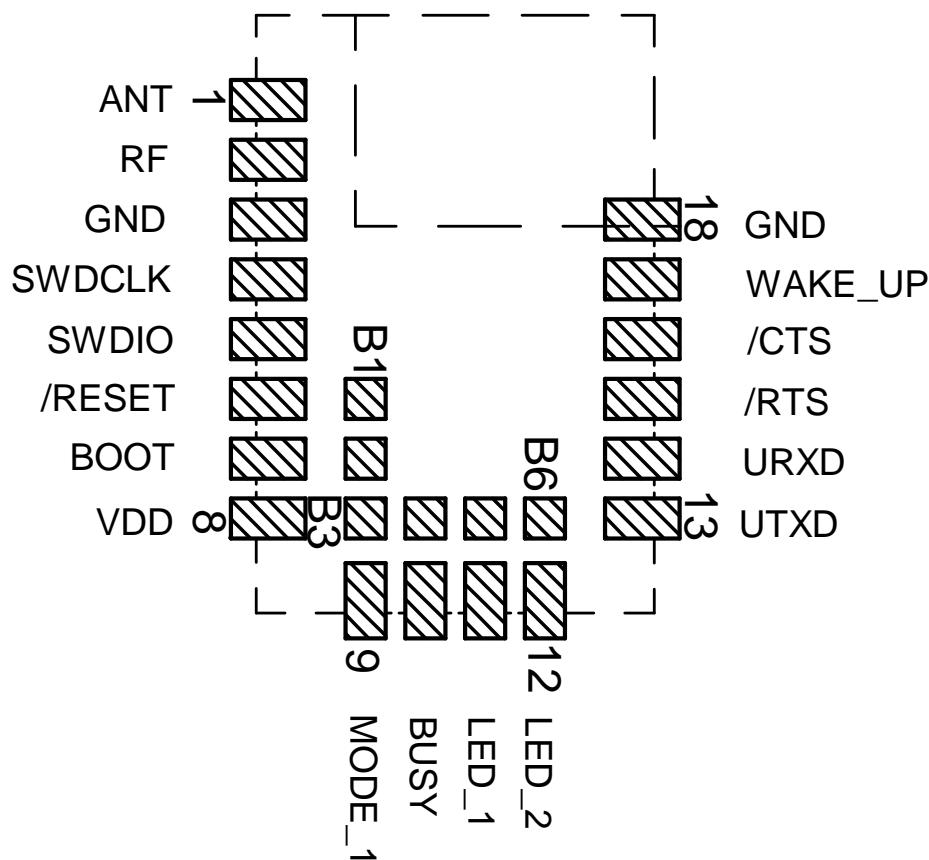


Figure 21: PWM behaviour

13.2. Supported GPIO_IDs for remote and local control

The following GPIOs of the Proteus-III are supported for remote and local access.



No	GPIO_ID	Supported functions
B1	1	Input, Output
B2	2	Input, Output
B3	3	Input, Output, PWM
B4	4	Input, Output, PWM
B5	5	Input, Output, PWM
B6	6	Input, Output, PWM

Table 74: Supported GPIO_IDs

14. Customizing the Proteus-III

14.1. DIS - Device information service

Besides the WE SPP-like profile for data transmission, the Proteus-III contains the so called Device Information Service (DIS), which is disabled by default. The DIS is a standard Bluetooth® LE profile that is recognized by all devices with Bluetooth® capabilities without the need of special implementations.

This profile exposes manufacturer information about a device and is used to personalize the Proteus-III to fuse with the custom product. It contains the following fields, that can only be modified by updating the respective user setting using the `CMD_SET_REQ` command:

Field name	User setting	Maximum length
Manufacturer Name String	<code>DIS_ManufacturerName</code>	64
Model Number String	<code>DIS_ModelNumber</code>	64
Serial Number String	<code>DIS_SerialNumber</code>	64
Hardware Revision String	<code>DIS_HWVersion</code>	16
Software Revision String	<code>DIS_SWVersion</code>	16

Furthermore, the user setting `DIS_Flags` defines which of the described DIS fields are finally placed in the DIS Bluetooth® profile. Thus after adding content to a DIS field user setting, for example the `DIS_ManufacturerName`, the user setting `DIS_Flags` has to be adapted such that the content is shown in the profile.

14.1.1. Make the module's firmware version visible on the radio

The Proteus-III receives firmware updates time by time, that contain optional features and improvements. For applications where the firmware version plays a role, the DIS profile can be used to display the firmware version on the radio.

To do that, first read the firmware version from the module using a `CMD_GET_REQ` command and the user setting `FS_FWVersion`. Then write the firmware version as a string to the user setting `DIS_SWVersion` using `CMD_SET_REQ` command. Finally, enable the corresponding bit in the user setting `DIS_Flags` to make the firmware version visible on the radio.

14.2. UUID

The UUID is a unique number identifying a Bluetooth® LE profile and thus describing its functions. The Proteus-III using its standard UUID is compatible to all devices that implement the WE SPP-like profile, whichever device it is integrated.

To suspend this interoperability, the user settings `RF_SPPBaseUUID`, `RF_SPPServiceUUID`, `RF_SPPTXUUID` and `RF_SPPRXUUID` can be used to modify the UUID of the WE SPP-like profile. With this, a new custom SPP-like profile is defined that is solely known to those that chose the new UUID.

The WE SPP-like profile consists of the 128 bit base UUID plus the 16 bit UUIDs for the underlying characteristics and services:

Characteristic	UUID
128 Bit RF_SPPBaseUUID	0x6E40xxxx-C352-11E5-953D-0002A5D5C51B
16 Bit RF_SPPServiceUUID	0x0001
16 Bit RF_SPPRXUUID	0x0002
16 Bit RF_SPPTXUUID	0x0003

Table 75: UUID default values

Using these user settings, the UUIDs of all characteristics calculate as the base UUID, where byte 2 and 3 are replaced by the underlying service or characteristic UUID.

Example:

With the above mentioned default values, the full UUID calculate as

Direction	Characteristic	128 Bit UUID
	Primary service	0x6E40 0001 -C352-11E5-953D-0002A5D5C51B
Remote peer to module	RX characteristic	0x6E40 0002 -C352-11E5-953D-0002A5D5C51B
Module to remote peer	TX characteristic	0x6E40 0003 -C352-11E5-953D-0002A5D5C51B

To generate a custom base UUID the Bluetooth® SIG recommends to use the tool:

<http://www.uuidgenerator.net/>

14.3. Appearance

The appearance of the Bluetooth® device is a 2 Bytes value defined by the Bluetooth® SIG. It can be configured by adapting the parameter RF_Appearance.

15. Custom firmware and configuration



Any kind of configuration and firmware, which is provided as Intel hex file, can be programmed on the radio module at Würth Elektronik eisSos production site.

In case of interest, please contact your Business Development Manager (BDM) or *WCS@we-online.com*.

15.1. Custom configuration of standard firmware

The configuration of the standard firmware includes adoption of the non-volatile settings to customer requirements and creating a customized product based on the standard product.

This variant will result in a customer exclusive module with a unique ordering number. It will also freeze the firmware version to a specific and customer tested version and thus results in a customer exclusive module with a unique ordering number.

Further scheduled firmware updates of the standard firmware will not be applied to this variant automatically. Applying updates or further functions require a customer request and release procedure.

15.2. Customer specific firmware

A customer specific firmware may include "Custom configuration of standard firmware" plus additional options or functions and tasks that are customer specific and not part of the standard firmware.

Further scheduled firmware updates of the standard firmware will not be applied to this variant automatically. Applying updates or further functions require a customer request and release procedure.

This also results in a customer exclusive module with a unique ordering number.

An example for this level of customization are functions like host-less operation where the module will perform data generation (e.g. by reading a SPI or I²C sensor) and cyclic transmission of this data to a data collector, while sleeping or being passive most of the time.

Also replacing UART with SPI as host communication interface is classified as a custom specific option.

Certification critical changes need to be re-evaluated by an external qualified measurement laboratory. These critical changes may occur when e.g. changing radio parameters, the channel access method, the duty-cycle or in case of various other functions and options possibly used or changed by a customer specific firmware.

15.3. Customer firmware

A customer firmware is a firmware written and tested by the customer himself or a 3rd party as a customer representative specifically for the hardware platform provided by a module.

This customer firmware (e.g. in form of an Intel hex file) will be implemented into the module's production process at our production site.

This also results in a customer exclusive module with a unique ordering number. The additional information needed for this type of customer firmware, such as hardware specific details and details towards the development of such firmware are not available for the public and can only be made available to qualified customers.



The qualification(s) and certification(s) of the standard module cannot be applied to this customer firmware solution without a review and verification.

16. Firmware updates

All products will experience maintenance, security and/or feature updates from time to time. For the standard products these are maintained via the PCN process.

Customers can request the creation of a customized product including a "firmware freeze" to ensure that they will receive their verified product even if the standard product is updated.

16.1. Firmware flashing using the production interface

Most Würth Elektronik eiSos wireless connectivity modules offer a production interface (e.g. JTAG, SWD, Spy-Bi-Wire) for module flash access. Depending on the product, this interface can be used by customers to erase the entire chip and install their own or special test firmware for certification tests.

Using the production interface is not intended to perform updates of Würth Elektronik eiSos standard product firmware¹.

Production firmware images and binary files for Würth Elektronik eiSos wireless connectivity modules are not publicly available.



Any certification, declaration, listing and qualification becomes invalid if the production interface is used by a customer.

Customers shall make the product specific firmware update interface available to their application. These methods will use a wired (UART, SPI, etc.) or wireless (Bluetooth® LE, WiFi, etc.) communication interface of the module to allow updating the product's firmware. Details are described in the next sections.

16.2. Firmware update using the Proteus-III OTA bootloader

This method offers a possibility to update the standard product firmware¹ over the air (OTA). Any other firmware (i.e. custom firmware, Bluetooth® test firmware (DTM), ...) must be flashed via the production interface (see chapter 16.1).

For the OTA firmware update, the Nordic nRF52 Bluetooth® LE DFU secure bootloader is integrated into the Proteus-III's firmware, which will communicate over the Bluetooth® LE interface. The OTA bootloader mode is a distinct operating mode besides the normal operating modes mentioned before. For this reason, a .zip-file can be provided, which contains all (bootloader, Softdevice, application) parts of the firmware in an encrypted and authenticated package.

Before starting any update procedure, please check whether the installed firmware can be updated to a new one:

¹The standard product firmware is the firmware described in this user manual.

Version of the firmware before the update	Version of the new firmware	App
1.x.x	1.x.x	nRF Device Firmware Update [7, 8]

Table 76: Compatibility matrix

To start the bootloader, one of the following two conditions has to be satisfied:

1. send the command `CMD_BOOTLOADER_REQ` to the module to restart in bootloader mode
2. during a reset and while restarting, a low signal has to be present on the *BOOT* pin of the module to start it in bootloader mode

The bootloader mode has started successfully if *LED_1* has turned on. After the bootloader has started successfully, the module goes into the advertising mode using the name "DFUProteus-III". Now, any Bluetooth® LE device hosting an application that understands the commands of the Nordic nRF52 Bluetooth® LE DFU Bootloader can connect in order to update the Proteus-III firmware.

The DFU application of the used App (see Table 76) is such an application. For more details, please refer to chapter 16.2.1. As soon as a connection has been set up, *LED_1* turns off again and *LED_2* turns on.



The implemented Nordic nRF52 Bluetooth® LE DFU bootloader uses a dual bank method to update the firmware. Thus, the old firmware is only replaced once the new firmware has been transferred and authenticated successfully. This prevents the module from being flashed with a faulty firmware.



An OTA firmware update will take several minutes to be performed, the duration is also dependent on how much of the firmware shall be updated (application only or complete update).



The max connection interval of the update service is set to 30 ms. Please check whether your mobile supports this speed.



Only signed firmware packages by Würth Elektronik eiSos will be accepted by the Proteus-III radio module. Signature and encryption ensure the zip package cannot be used for other products.



This method is only applicable if the Proteus-III still contains an intact bootloader.

16.2.1. Firmware update steps using the nRF Device Firmware Update app

If the radio module Proteus-III has been set to bootloader mode, the nRF Device Firmware Update app [7, 8]  can be used to perform the OTA firmware update.

- Open the app, press "Select" to choose the file. The file explorer opens where you can select the zip file that contains the FOTA image.
- Then press "Select" to choose the device to update. The app scans for available Bluetooth® LE devices. The Proteus-III in bootloader mode appears as "DFUxxxx" in the scan list. Select that one.



If there is no device named "DFUxxxx" on the radio, please check whether the module has been started in bootloader mode or not.

- Then press "Start" to start the update process.
- Wait until it has finished.

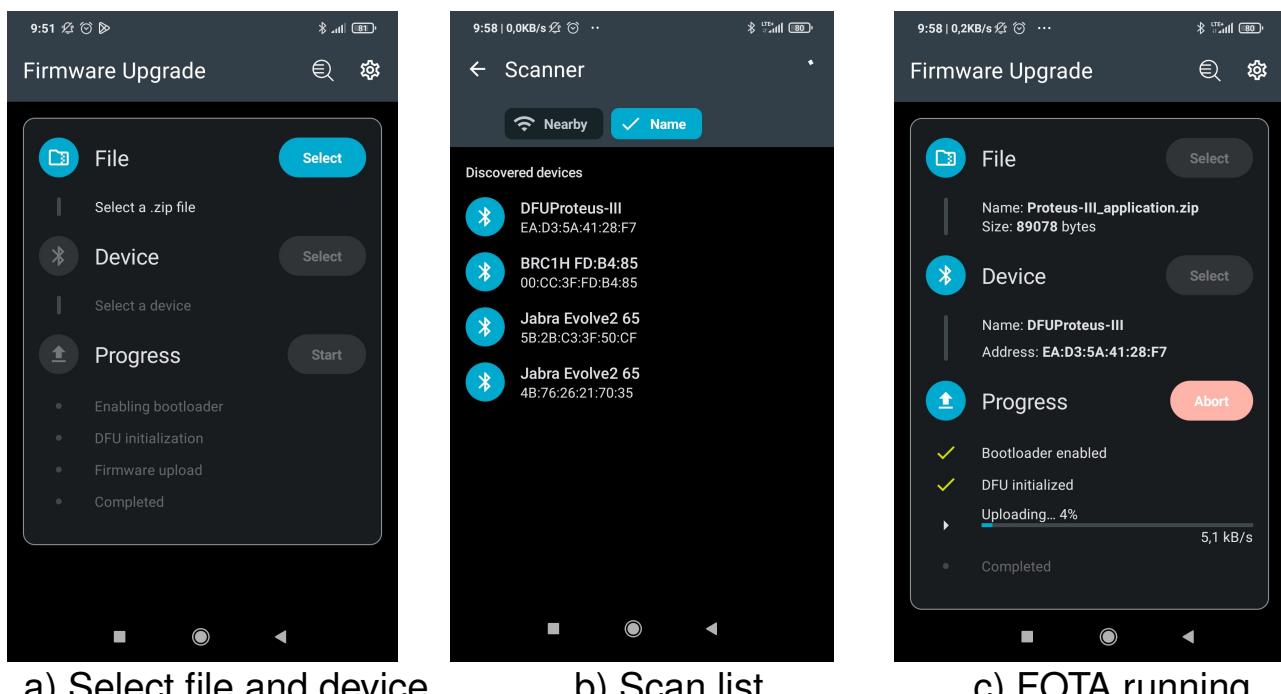


Figure 22: nRF Device Firmware Update app

17. Firmware history

Version 1.0.0 "Release"

- First production release.

Version 1.1.0 "Release"

- Improved UART speed.

Version 1.3.0 "Release"

- New user settings RF_SPPServiceUUID, RF_SPPTXUUID, RF_SPPRXUUID. Together with the user setting RF_SPPBaseUUID the UUIDs of the SPP-like Bluetooth® LE profile can be customized.
- New option for user setting RF_AdvertisingFlags to extend the device name in the advertising packet to 26 bytes.
- GPIO pins have new options:
 - *B3-B6* support PWM.
 - *B1-B6* can be configured to default.
 - *B1-B6* are set to input, in case the radio module is set to sleep mode using the CMD_SLEEP_REQ.
- New pairing method "Lesc just works" has been added to the user setting RF_SecFlags.
- New option SECFLAGS_BONDEDCONNECTIONSONLY_ENABLE has been added to the user setting RF_SecFlags. This option blocks the connection setup of unbonded devices.
- New command CMD_ALLOWUNBONDEDCONNECTIONS_REQ has been added to temporarily allow a bonding to a new device.

Version 1.4.0 "Release"

- Updated the user setting RF_ConnectionTiming. The new values better support most recent Android and iOS devices.
- Updated the user setting CFG_Flags. A new option has been added that defines whether the Proteus-III closes the Bluetooth® LE connection in case the connected central (i.e. smart phone) does not respect the configured connection interval settings (see RF_ConnectionTiming).
- Extended the command CMD_GETSTATE_CNF. Additional information has been added to the command in ACTION_CONNECTED state.
- For GPIO pins that support PWM, the maximum PWM ratio 100% has been mapped to 0xFE. When using 0xFF as ratio in CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITECONFIG_REQ, CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITECONFIG_REQ, CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_WRITE_REQ or CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_WRITE_REQ command, the value is internally replaced with 0xFE to guarantee backwards compatibility.
- For GPIO pins that are configured as PWM, the commands CMD_GPIO_REMOTE_READ_REQ and CMD_GPIO_LOCAL_READ_REQ can be used to read the current PWM ratio value.
- Reduced pause between single bytes transmitted via UART.

Version 1.5.0 "Release"

- Added the user setting `RF_CompanyIdentifier` to modify the company identifier used in beacons
- Added option to set the `FS_BTMAC`
- Added new options for improved data transmission via peripheral only mode (`UART_TransparentTimeout`, `UART_TransparentMaxPayload`, `UART_TransparentETX`, `UART_TransparentETXConfig`)
- Added option to request the maximum transmission unit (MTU) via remote command. For more details, please refer to the Proteus-III advanced developer guide [3]

17.1. Known issues

Index	Details	Affected versions
KI-001	<p>Description: Using 32 byte <code>RF_DeviceName</code> will result in a malfunctioning device.</p> <p>Affected functions: User setting <code>RF_DeviceName</code> and command <code>CMD_SET_REQ</code>.</p> <p>Workaround: Use a <code>RF_DeviceName</code> of maximum 31 characters. The device can be recovered by a FOTA (firmware over the air) update.</p>	≤ 1.1.0
KI-002	<p>Description: Setting the Bluetooth® reserved UUID <code>0000xxxx-0000-1000-8000-00805f9b34fb</code> as base UUID will result in malfunctioning. The module will not start-up again.</p> <p>Affected functions: User setting <code>RF_SPPBaseUUID</code> and command <code>CMD_SET_REQ</code>.</p> <p>Workaround: Do not use <code>CMD_SET_REQ</code> function to set the user setting <code>RF_SPPBaseUUID</code> to the value <code>0000xxxx-0000-1000-8000-00805f9b34fb</code>. The device can be recovered by a FOTA (firmware over the air) update.</p>	≤ 1.4.0

18. Hardware history

Version 1.5 "Release"

- Update chip to latest revision

19. Design in guide

19.1. Advice for schematic and layout

For users with less RF experience it is advisable to closely copy the relating EV-Board with respect to schematic and layout, as it is a proven design. The layout should be conducted with particular care, because even small deficiencies could affect the radio performance and its range or even the conformity.

The following general advice should be taken into consideration:

- A clean, stable power supply is strongly recommended. Interference, especially oscillation can severely restrain range and conformity.
- Variations in voltage level should be avoided.
- LDOs, properly designed in, usually deliver a proper regulated voltage.
- Blocking capacitors and a ferrite bead in the power supply line can be included to filter and smoothen the supply voltage when necessary.
- Elements for ESD protection should be placed on all pins that are accessible from the outside and should be placed close to the accessible area. For example, the RF-pin is accessible when using an external antenna and should be protected.
- ESD protection for the antenna connection must be chosen such as to have a minimum effect on the RF signal. For example, a protection diode with low capacitance such as the 8231606A or a 68 nH air-core coil connecting the RF-line to ground give good results.
- Placeholders for optional antenna matching or additional filtering are recommended.
- The antenna path should be kept as short as possible.
- The use of an external reset IC should be considered if one of the following points is relevant:
 - The slew rate of the power supply exceeds the electrical specifications.
 - The effect of different current consumptions on the voltage level of batteries or voltage regulators should be considered. The module draws higher currents in certain scenarios like start-up or radio transmit which may lead to a voltage drop on the supply. A restart under such circumstances should be prevented by ensuring that the supply voltage does not drop below the minimum specifications.
 - Voltage levels below the minimum recommended voltage level may lead to malfunction. The reset pin of the module shall be held on LOW logic level whenever the VDD is not stable or below the minimum operating Voltage.
 - Special care must be taken in case of battery powered systems.
- To avoid the risk of short circuits and interference there should be no routing underneath the module on the top layer of the baseboard.
- On the second layer, a ground plane is recommended, to provide good grounding and shielding to any following layers and application environment.

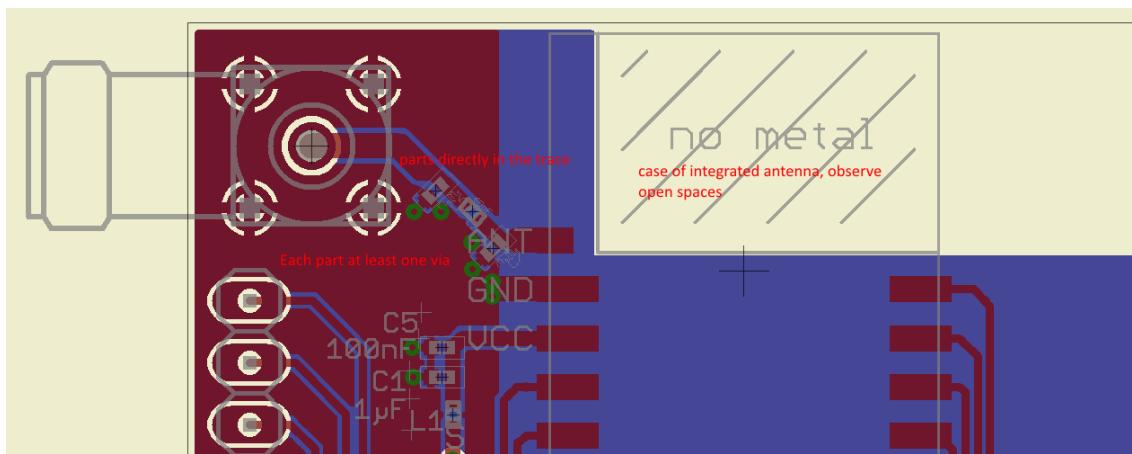


Figure 23: Layout

- In case of integrated antennas it is required to have areas free from ground. This area should be copied from the EV-Board.
- The area with the integrated antenna must overlap with the carrier board and should not protrude, as it is matched to sitting directly on top of a PCB.
- Modules with integrated antennas should be placed with the antenna at the edge of the main board. It should not be placed in the middle of the main board or far away from the edge. This is to avoid tracks beside the antenna.
- Filter and blocking capacitors should be placed directly in the tracks without stubs, to achieve the best effect.
- Antenna matching elements should be placed close to the antenna / connector, blocking capacitors close to the module.
- Ground connections for the module and the capacitors should be kept as short as possible and with at least one separate through hole connection to the ground layer.
- ESD protection elements should be placed as close as possible to the exposed areas.



Fixed values can not be recommended, as these depend on the circumstances of the application (main power source, interferences etc.).

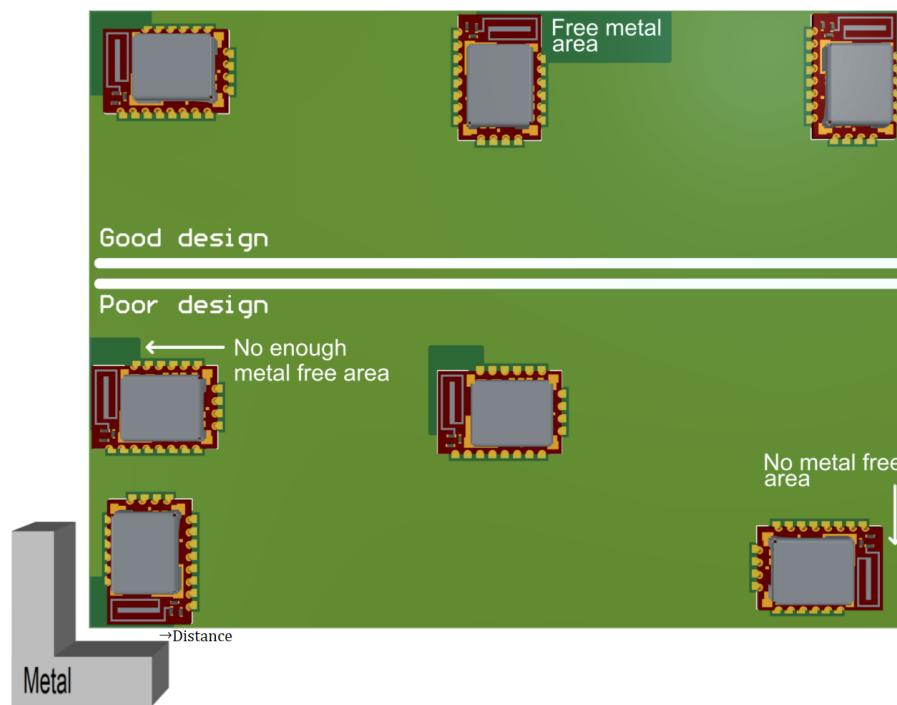


Figure 24: Placement of the module with integrated antenna

19.2. Designing the antenna connection

The antenna should be connected with a 50Ω line. This is needed to obtain impedance matching to the module and avoids reflections. Here we show as an example how to calculate the dimensions of a 50Ω line in form of a micro strip above ground, as this is easiest to calculate. Other connections like coplanar or strip line are more complicated to calculate but can offer more robustness to EMC. There are free calculation tools available in the internet.

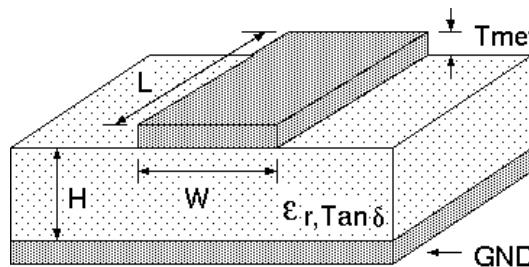


Figure 25: Dimensioning the antenna connection as micro strip

The width W for a micro strip can be calculated using the following equation:

$$W = 1.25 \times \left(\frac{5.98 \times H}{e^{\frac{50 \times \sqrt{\epsilon_r} + 1.41}{87}}} - T_{met} \right)$$

Example:

A FR4 material with $\epsilon_r = 4.3$, a height $H = 1000 \mu\text{m}$ and a copper thickness of $T_{met} = 18 \mu\text{m}$ will lead to a trace width of $W \sim 1.9 \text{ mm}$. To ease the calculation of the micro strip line (or e.g. a

coplanar) many calculators can be found in the internet.

- As rule of thumb a distance of about $3 \times W$ should be observed between the micro strip and other traces / ground.
- The micro strip refers to ground, therefore there has to be the ground plane underneath the trace.
- Keep the feeding line as short as possible.

19.3. Antenna solutions

There exist several kinds of antennas, which are optimized for different needs. Chip antennas are optimized for minimal size requirements but at the expense of range, PCB antennas are optimized for minimal costs, and are generally a compromise between size and range. Both usually fit inside a housing.

Range optimization in general is at the expense of space. Antennas that are bigger in size, so that they would probably not fit in a small housing, are usually equipped with a RF connector. A benefit of this connector may be to use it to lead the RF signal through a metal plate (e.g. metal housing, cabinet).

As a rule of thumb a minimum distance of $\lambda / 10$ (which is 3.5 cm @ 868 MHz and 1.2 cm @ 2.44 GHz) from the antenna to any other metal should be kept. Metal placed further away will not directly influence the behavior of the antenna, but will anyway produce shadowing.



Keep the antenna as far as possible from large metal objects to avoid electro-magnetic field blocking.

In the following chapters, some special types of antenna are described.

19.3.1. Wire antenna

An effective antenna is a $\lambda / 4$ radiator with a suiting ground plane. The simplest realization is a piece of wire. Its length is depending on the used radio frequency, so for example 8.6 cm 868.0 MHz and 3.1 cm for 2.440 GHz as frequency. This radiator needs a ground plane at its feeding point. Ideally, it is placed vertically in the middle of the ground plane. As this is often not possible because of space requirements, a suitable compromise is to bend the wire away from the PCB respective to the ground plane. The $\lambda/4$ radiator has approximately 40Ω input impedance. Therefore, matching is not required.

19.3.2. Chip antenna

There are many chip antennas from various manufacturers. The benefit of a chip antenna is obviously the minimal space required and reasonable costs. However, this is often at the expense of range. For the chip antennas, reference designs should be followed as closely as possible, because only in this constellation can the stated performance be achieved.

19.3.3. PCB antenna

PCB antenna designs can be very different. The special attention can be on the miniaturization or on the performance. The benefits of the PCB antenna are their small / not existing (if PCB space is available) costs, however the EV of a PCB antenna holds more risk of failure than the use of a finished antenna. Most PCB antenna designs are a compromise of range and space between chip antennas and connector antennas.

19.3.4. Antennas provided by Würth Elektronik eiSos

Besides the radio modules Würth Elektronik eiSos provides various antennas tailored for the different frequency bands. The recommended single external antennas are shown in the subsequent chapters.



In case integrated multilayer chip antennas are needed because of space limitations, please refer to

<https://www.we-online.com/en/components/products/WE-MCA>.

19.3.4.1. 2600130021 - Himalia dipole antenna



Figure 26: Himalia dipole antenna

Due to the fact that the antenna has dipole topology, there is no need for an additional ground plane. Nevertheless, the specification was measured edge mounted and 90 ° bent on a 100 x 100 mm ground plane.

Specification	Value
Frequency range [GHz]	2.4 – 2.5
Impedance [Ω]	50
VSWR	$\leq 2:1$
Polarization	Linear
Radiation	Omni-Directional
Peak Gain [dBi]	2.8
Average Gain [dBi]	-0.6
Efficiency	85 %
Dimensions (L x d) [mm]	83.1 x 10
Weight [g]	7.4
Connector	SMA plug
Operating temp. [°C]	-40 – +80

Special care must be taken for FCC certification when using this external antenna to fulfill the requirement of permanently attached antenna or unique coupling, for example by using the certified dipole antenna in a closed housing, so that it is possible to remove it only through professional installation.

20. Reference design

Proteus-III was tested and certified on the corresponding Proteus-III EV-Board. For the European Conformity the EV-Board serves as reference design, for the FCC it is mandatory to follow at least the trace design.

Complete layout and schematic information can be found in the manual of the Proteus-III EV-Board.

20.1. EV-Board

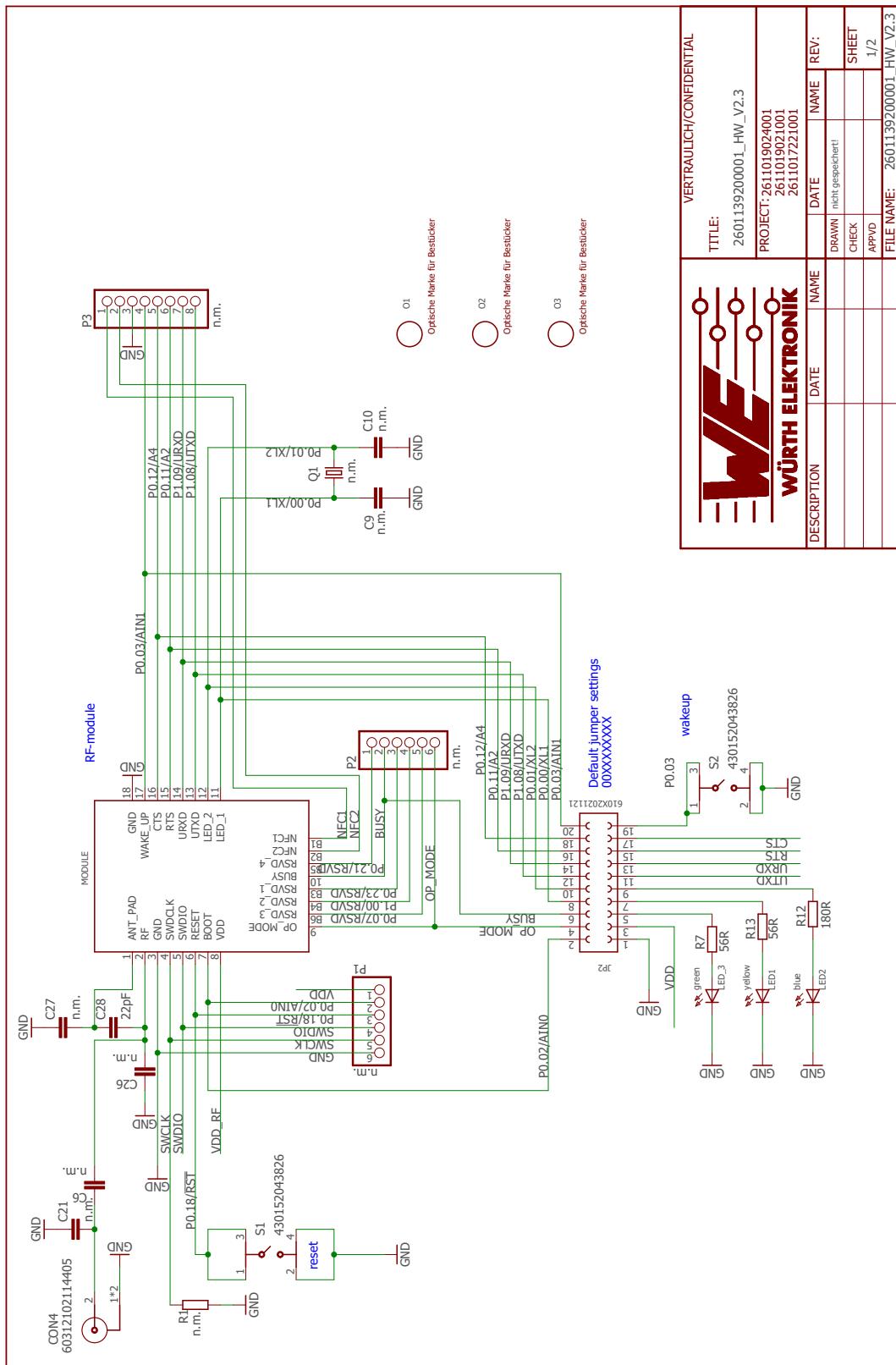


Figure 27: Reference design: Schematic page 1

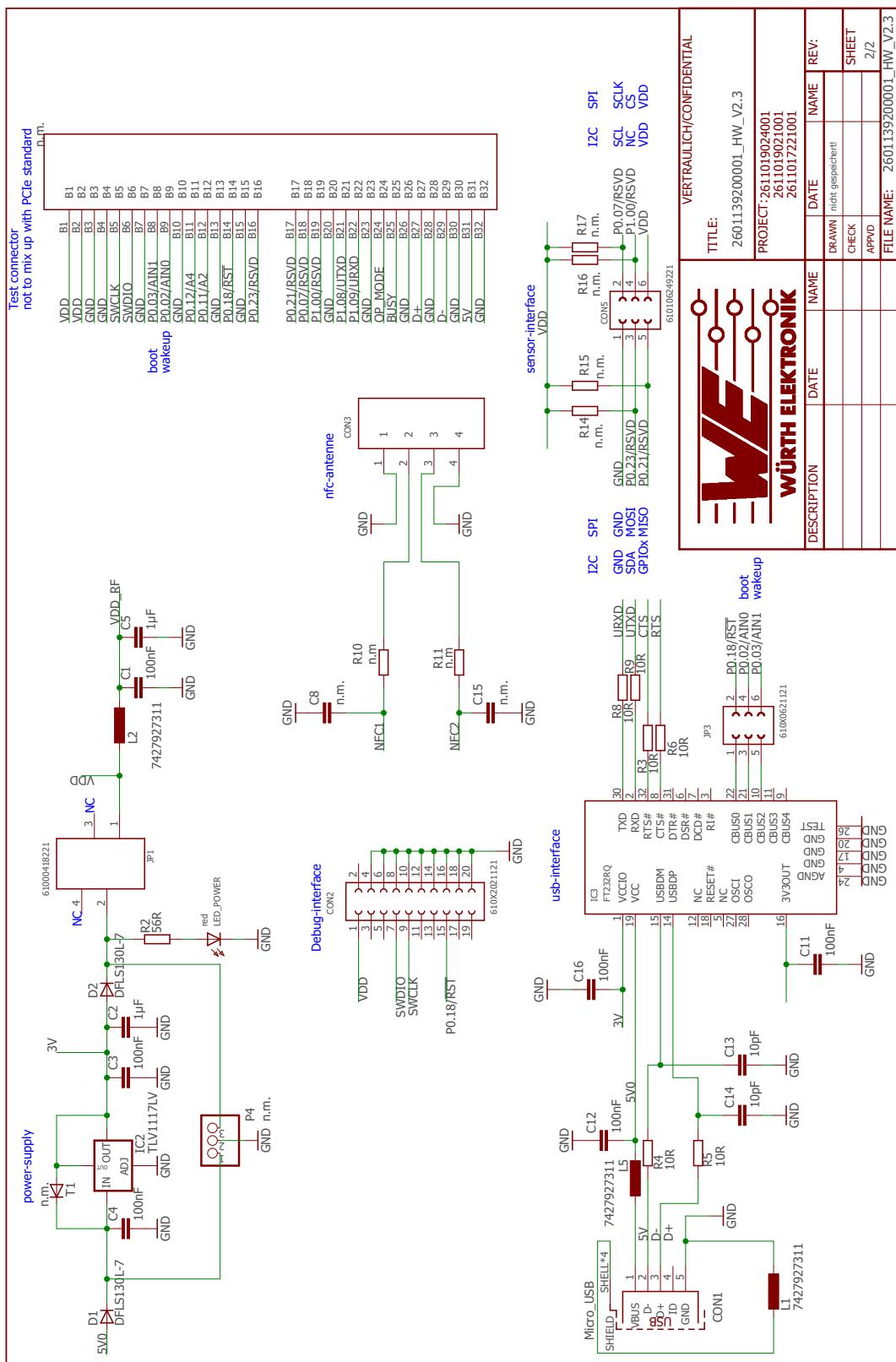
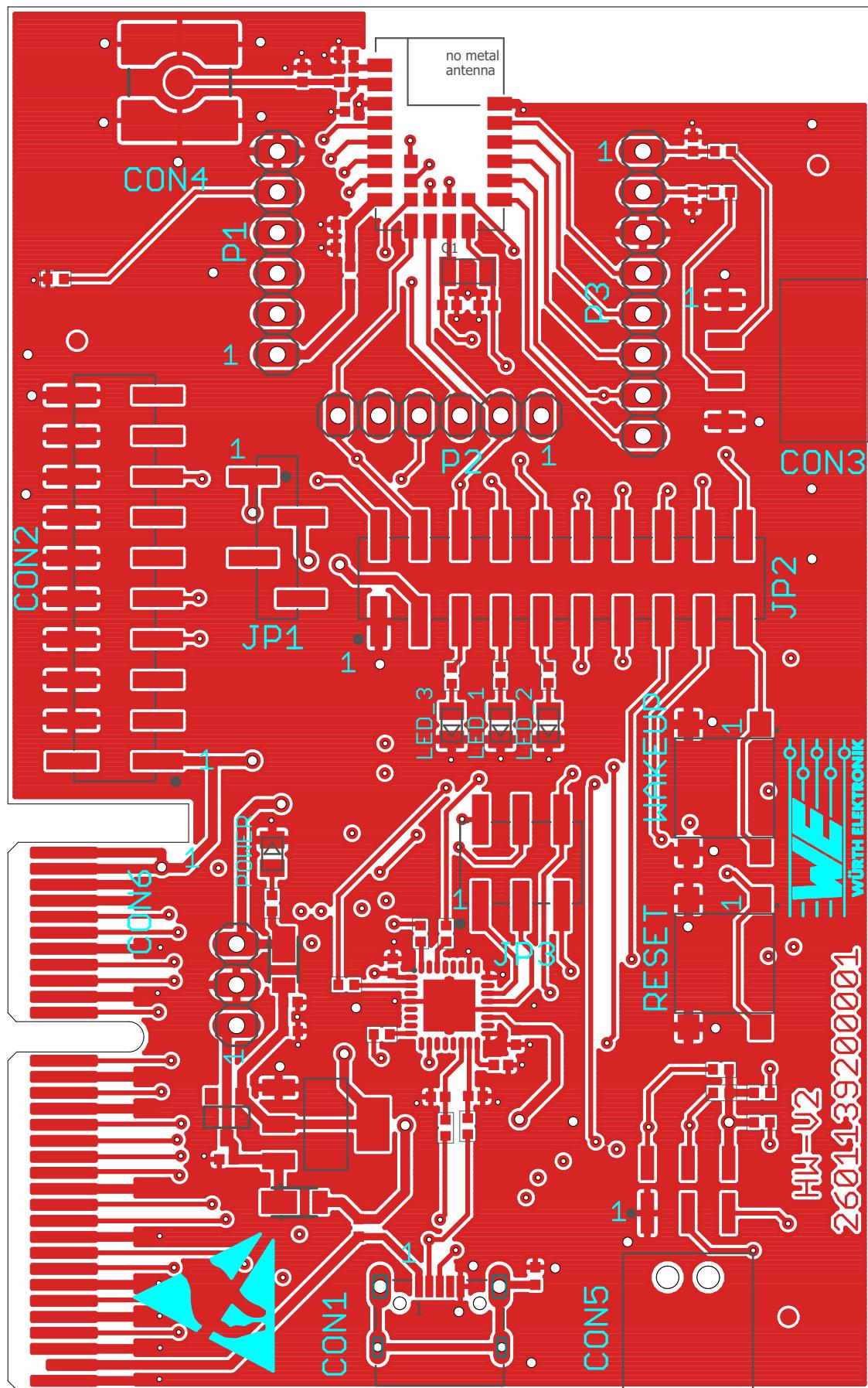


Figure 28: Reference design: Schematic page 2



20.2. Radiation characteristic of the module's internal antenna

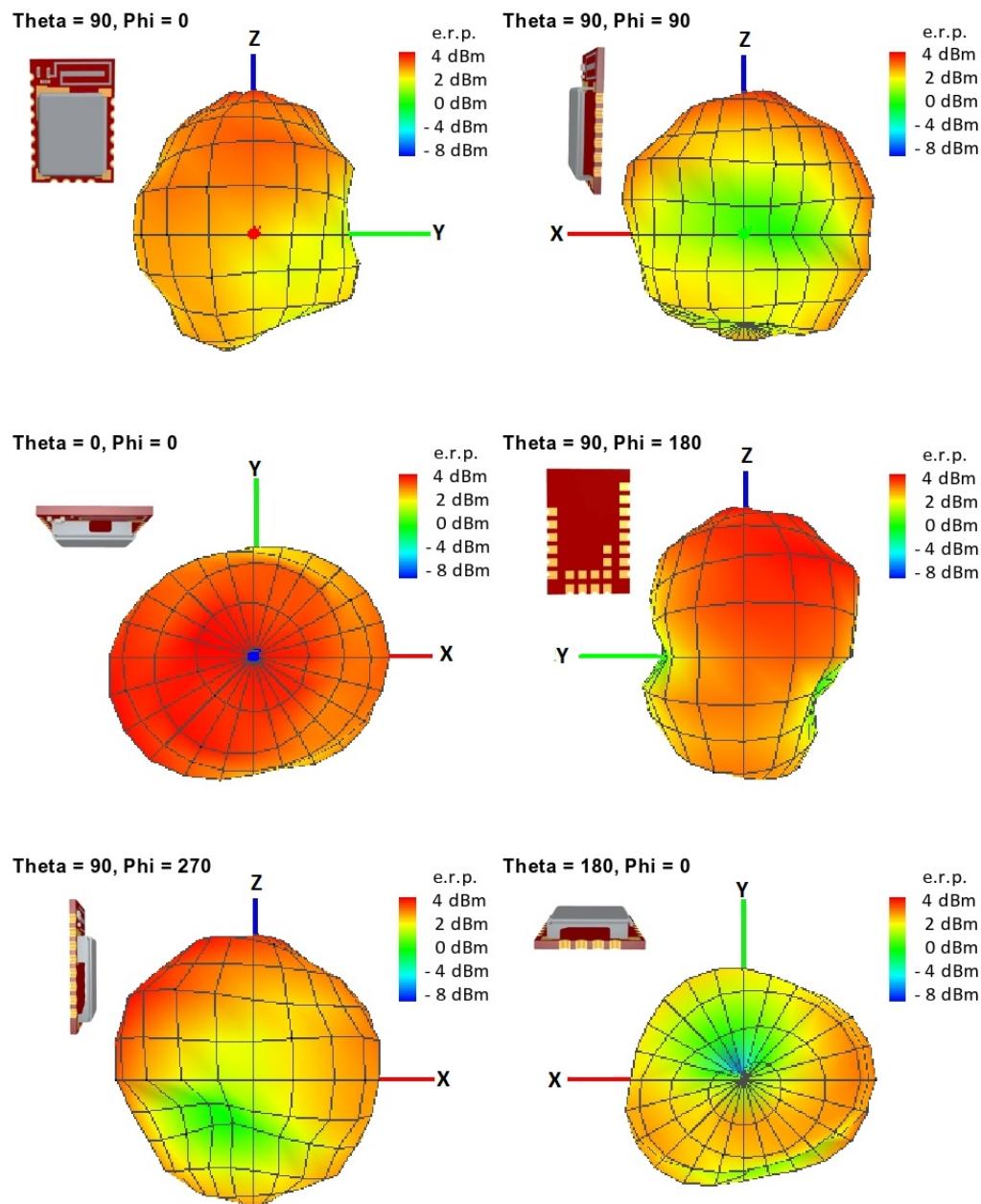


Figure 30: Antenna characteristic of the module with its integrated antenna measured on the official EV-Board (2611149024001)



It is important to be aware that size and shape of the ground plane as well as the placement of module has influence on the radiation pattern.

20.3. Trace design

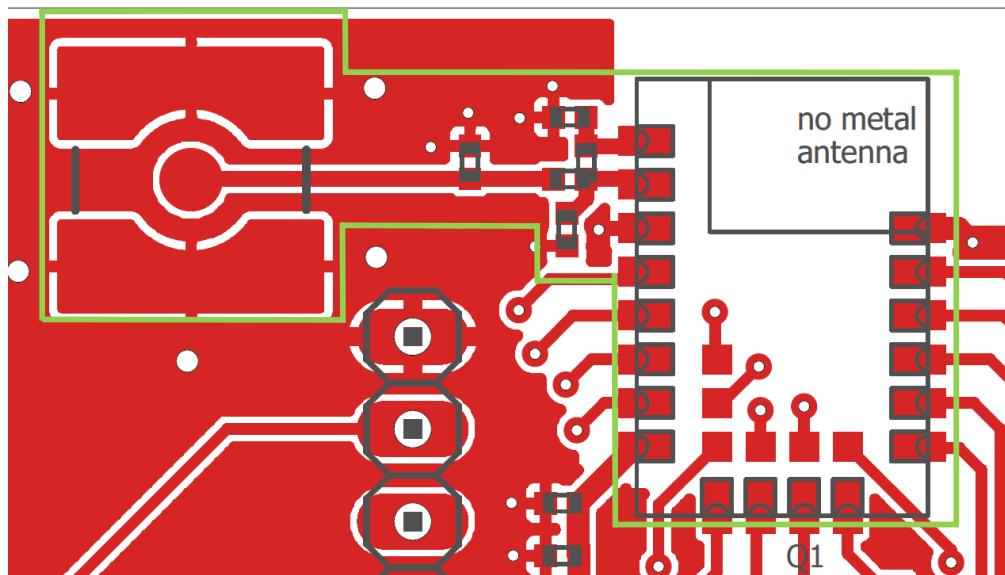


Figure 31: Trace design: Layout

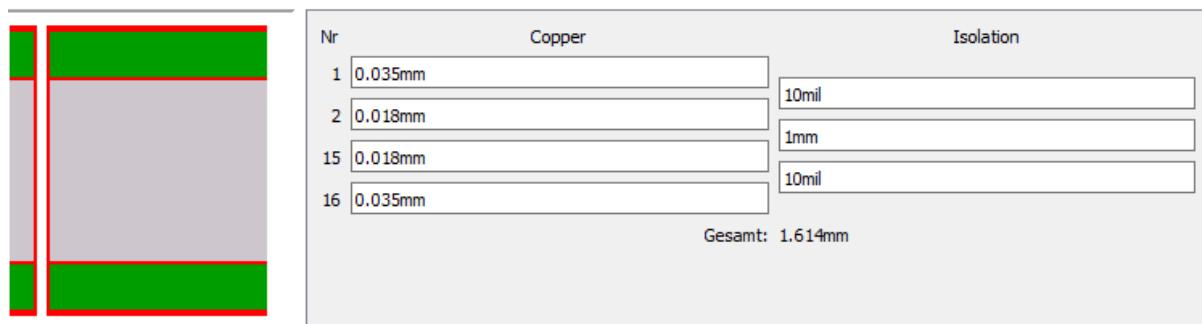


Figure 32: Reference design: Stack-up

- Top layer is used for routing, filled with ground plane except area under the module and antenna free area.
- Second layer is filled with ground plane, except the antenna free area.
- Third layer is the supply layer, except antenna free area. Some routing is allowed, not dividing the supply layer in to many or too small parts.
- Bottom layer is used for routing and filled with ground.

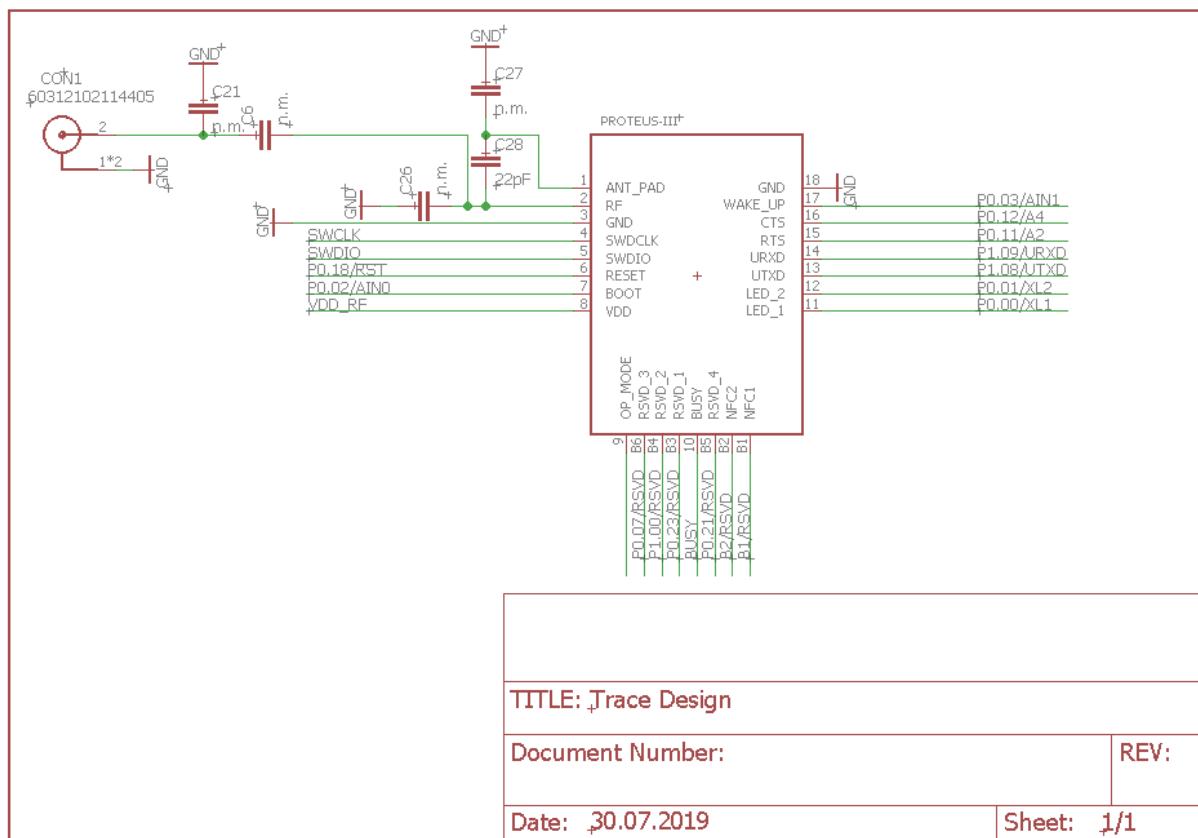


Figure 33: Trace design: Schematic

The RF pin of module can be coupled to on-board PCB antenna or an external antenna. Two variants of the Proteus-III are certified:

- For the on-board PCB antenna: 22 pF shall be assembled on C28.
 - If additional tuning is needed in the end application, C27 and C26 can be assembled.
 - The exact values of C27 and C26 shall be specified in the end application corresponding to the individual need.

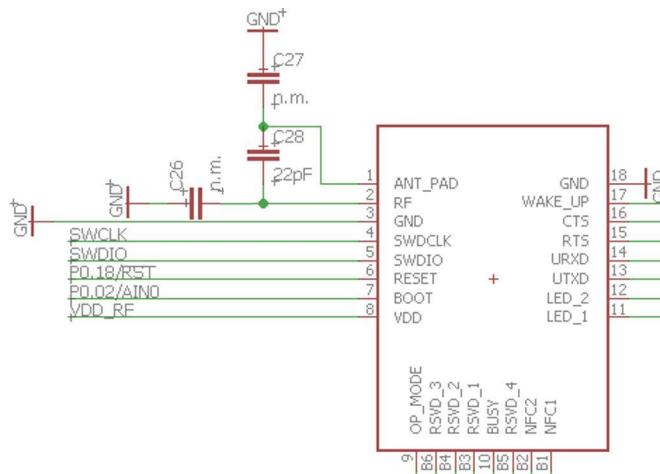


Figure 34: On-board PCB antenna

- For the external antenna: 22 pF shall be assembled on C6.
 - If additional tuning is needed in the end application, C21 and C26 can be assembled.
 - The exact values of C21 and C26 shall be specified in the end application corresponding to the individual need.

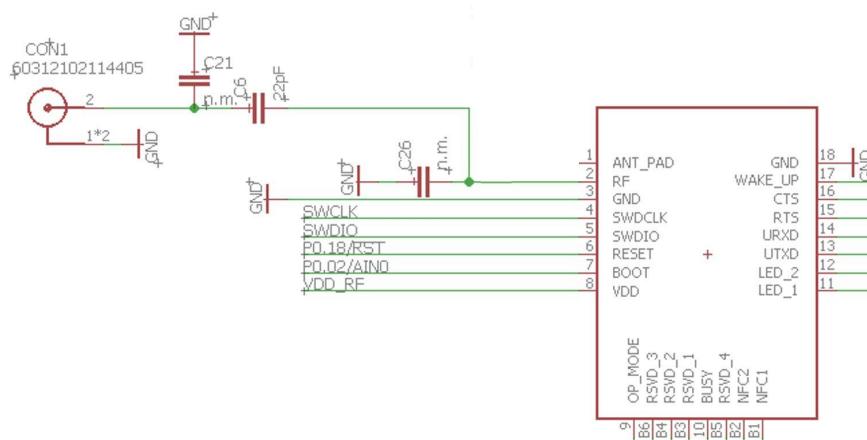


Figure 35: External antenna connection



To reference to the Würth Elektronik eiSos' FCC ID it is mandatory to use the trace design.

20.4. Battery powered systems

Radio modules require a certain type, range and quality of the power supply. When switching on the power (VCC) towards the module, a quick ramp-up of the VCC is required. During the radio module's operation the power must be stable, especially in scenarios of higher current consumption, like radio transmission operations with high power.

20.4.1. Recharging secondary cell batteries

The rise time of the VCC must be below 60 ms to make the chipset booting properly. In systems where a battery management circuit is charging secondary cell batteries after deep discharge, this requirement is not met.

To protect the application and radio module from malfunctioning in such a scenario, supervisor or reset ICs may help. These ICs can be used to enable the voltage regulator once the VCC is stable and above a defined voltage threshold. This ensures the required rapid ramp-up of the supply voltage and a minimum VCC level the module needs for reliable operation.

Besides of that, a second line of the reset IC may control the reset pin of the radio module, and thus only let the radio module boot-up after the voltage level is stable.

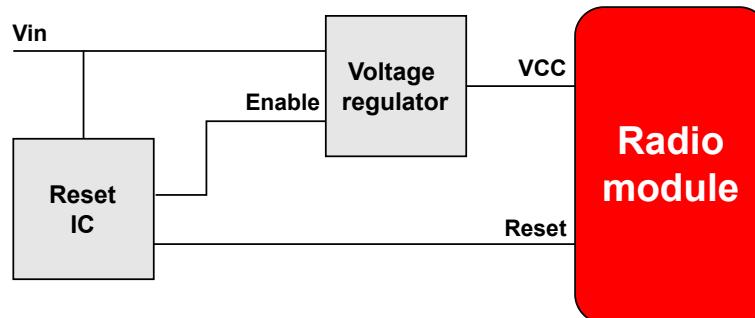


Figure 36: Reset IC

20.4.2. End device testing

In case of a battery operated end device, please test the following scenarios to ensure that the power supply is appropriate:

1. Data transmission with high output power and low battery voltage. Please check that the voltage drop will not lead to unwanted radio module behavior (reset or malfunctioning).
2. When discharging the battery, please check that the radio module is protected from voltage levels which are out of its specification.
3. When charging the battery from deep discharging, please check that the module's power is switched on as described in its specification.

21. Manufacturing information

21.1. Moisture sensitivity level

This wireless connectivity product is categorized as JEDEC Moisture Sensitivity Level 3 (MSL3), which requires special handling.

More information regarding the MSL requirements can be found in the IPC/JEDEC J-STD-020 standard on www.jedec.org.

More information about the handling, picking, shipping and the usage of moisture/reflow and/or process sensitive products can be found in the IPC/JEDEC J-STD-033 standard on www.jedec.org.

21.2. Soldering

21.2.1. Reflow soldering

Attention must be paid on the thickness of the solder resist between the host PCB top side and the modules bottom side. Only lead-free assembly is recommended according to JEDEC J-STD020.

Profile feature		Value
Preheat temperature, min	T_S Min	150 °C
Preheat temperature, max	T_S Max	200 °C
Preheat time from T_S Min to T_S Max	t_S	60 - 120 s
Ramp-up rate (T_L to T_P)		3 °C/s max.
Liquidous temperature	T_L	217 °C
Time t_L maintained above T_L	t_L	60 - 150 s
Peak package body temperature	T_P	260 °C
Time within 5 °C of actual peak temperature	t_P	20 - 30 s
Ramp-down rate (T_P to T_L)		6 °C/s max.
Time 20 °C to T_P		8 min max.

Table 78: Classification reflow soldering profile, Note: refer to IPC/JEDEC J-STD-020E

It is recommended to solder this module on the last reflow cycle of the PCB. For solder paste use a LFM-48W or Indium based SAC 305 alloy (Sn 96.5 / Ag 3.0 / Cu 0.5 / Indium 8.9HF / Type 3 / 89 %) type 3 or higher.

The reflow profile must be adjusted based on the thermal mass of the entire populated PCB, heat transfer efficiency of the reflow oven and the specific type of solder paste used. Based on the specific process and PCB layout the optimal soldering profile must be adjusted and verified. Other soldering methods (e.g. vapor phase) have not been verified and have to be validated by the customer at their own risk. Rework is not recommended.

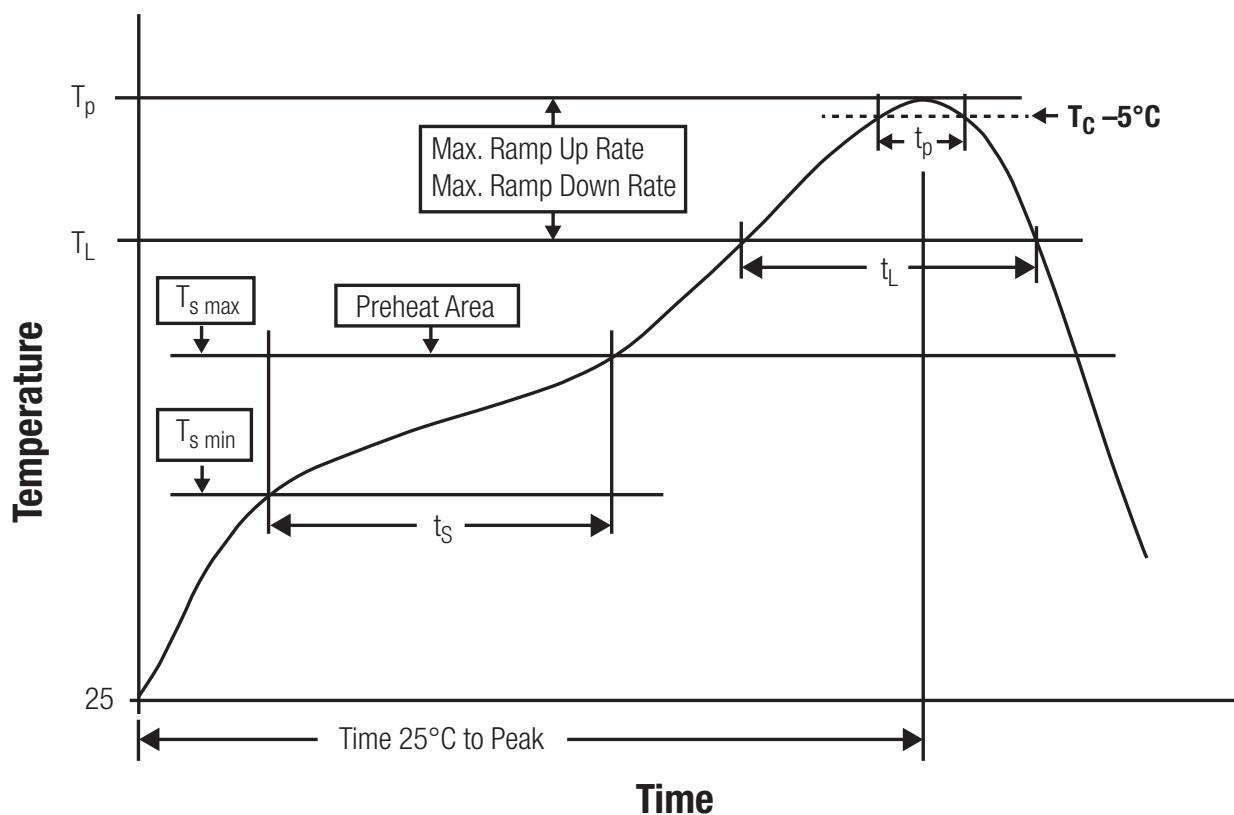


Figure 37: Reflow soldering profile

After reflow soldering, visually inspect the board to confirm proper alignment.

21.2.2. Cleaning

Do not clean the product. Any residue cannot be easily removed by washing. Use a "no clean" soldering paste and do not clean the board after soldering.

- Do not clean the product with water. Capillary effects can draw water into the gap between the host PCB and the module, absorbing water underneath it. If water is trapped inside, it may short-circuit adjoining pads. The water may also destroy the label and ink-jet printed text on it.
- Cleaning processes using alcohol or other organic solvents may draw solder flux residues into the housing, which won't be detected in a post-wash inspection. The solvent may also destroy the label and ink-jet printed text on it.
- Do not use ultrasonic cleaning as it will permanently damage the part, particularly the crystal oscillators.

21.2.3. Potting and coating

- If the product is potted in the customer application, the potting material might shrink or expand during and after hardening. Shrinking could lead to an incomplete seal, allowing contaminants into the component. Expansion could damage components. We recommend a manual inspection after potting to avoid these effects.
- Conformal coating or potting results in loss of warranty.
- The RF shield will not protect the part from low-viscosity coatings and potting. An undefined amount of coating and potting will enter inside the shielding.
- Conformal coating and potting will influence the parts of the radio front end and consequently influence the radio performance.
- Potting will influence the temperature behavior of the device. This might be critical for components with high power.

21.2.4. Other notations

- Do not attempt to improve the grounding by forming metal strips directly to the EMI covers or soldering on ground cables, as it may damage the part and will void the warranty.
- Always solder every pad to the host PCB even if some are unused, to improve the mechanical strength of the module.
- The part is sensitive to ultrasonic waves, as such do not use ultrasonic cleaning, welding or other processing. Any ultrasonic processing will void the warranty.

21.3. ESD handling

This product is highly sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). As such, always use proper ESD precautions when handling. Make sure to handle the part properly throughout all stages of production, including on the host PCB where the module is installed. For ESD ratings, refer to the module series' maximum ESD section. For more information, refer to the relevant chapter 4. Failing to follow the aforementioned recommendations can result in severe damage to the part.

- The first contact point when handling the PCB is always between the local GND and the host PCB GND, unless there is a galvanic coupling between the local GND (for example work table) and the host PCB GND.
- Before assembling an antenna patch, connect the grounds.
- While handling the RF pin, avoid contact with any charged capacitors and be careful when contacting any materials that can develop charges (for example coaxial cable with around 50-80 pF/m, patch antenna with around 10 pF, soldering iron etc.)
- Do not touch any exposed area of the antenna to avoid electrostatic discharge. Do not let the antenna area be touched in a non ESD-safe manner.
- When soldering, use an ESD-safe soldering iron.

21.4. Safety recommendations

It is your duty to ensure that the product is allowed to be used in the destination country and within the required environment. Usage of the product can be dangerous and must be tested and verified by the end user. Be especially careful of:

- Use in areas with risk of explosion (for example oil refineries, gas stations).
- Use in areas such as airports, aircraft, hospitals, etc., where the product may interfere with other electronic components.

It is the customer's responsibility to ensure compliance with all applicable legal, regulatory and safety-related requirements as well as applicable environmental regulations. Disassembling the product is not allowed. Evidence of tampering will void the warranty.

- Compliance with the instructions in the product manual is recommended for correct product set-up.
- The product must be provided with a consolidated voltage source. The wiring must meet all applicable fire and security prevention standards.
- Handle with care. Avoid touching the pins as there could be ESD damage.

Be careful when working with any external components. When in doubt consult the technical documentation and relevant standards. Always use an antenna with the proper characteristics.



Würth Elektronik eiSos radio modules with high output power of up to 500 mW generate a large amount of heat while transmitting. The manufacturer of the end device must take care of potentially necessary actions for his application.

22. Product testing

22.1. Würth Elektronik eiSos in-house production tests

To achieve a high quality standard, Würth Elektronik eiSos follows a philosophy of supplying fully tested radio modules. At the end of the production process, every unit undergoes an optical inspection. Here the quality of soldering, edge castellation and edge milling is monitored.

If this has been passed, the radio modules are handed over to the automatic test equipment for the electrical characterization. This includes:

- Voltage and current tests to ensure proper electrical performance
- RF characteristics (frequency, spectrum, TX power) measurement and calibration
- Radio communication tests
- Firmware and serial number programming
- Host interface communication tests

The automated testing process is logged for internal quality control. The gained measurement data of each unit is analysed to detect defective parts and investigate the corresponding root cause. Defective radio modules are discarded, in order to guarantee a 100% failure-free delivery to customers.

22.2. EMS production tests

The rigorous in-series production testing ensures that EMS don't need to duplicate firmware tests or measurements. This streamlines the process and eliminates the need for additional testing over analogue and digital interfaces during device production. When it comes to device testing, the ideal focus should be on module assembly quality:

- All module pins are soldered properly on the base PCB
- There are no short circuits
- The mounting process did not damage the module
- The communication between host and radio module is working
- The antenna is connected properly

Simple "Go/No go" tests, like checking the RSSI value, give already a hint if the power supply and antenna have been connected properly.

In addition to such standard testing procedures, radio module integrators have the flexibility to perform additional dedicated tests to thoroughly evaluate the device. Specific tests they can consider are:

- Measure module current consumption in a specified operating state. Deviations from expected results (compared to a "Golden Device") can signal potential issues.

- Perform functional tests, including communication checks with the host controller and verification of interfaces.
- Assess fundamental RF characteristics (modulation accuracy, power levels, spectrum). Verify that the device meets expected performance standards.

23. Physical specifications

23.1. Dimensions

Dimensions
12 x 8 x 2 mm

Table 79: Dimensions

23.2. Weight

Weight
< 1 g

Table 80: Weight

23.3. Module drawing

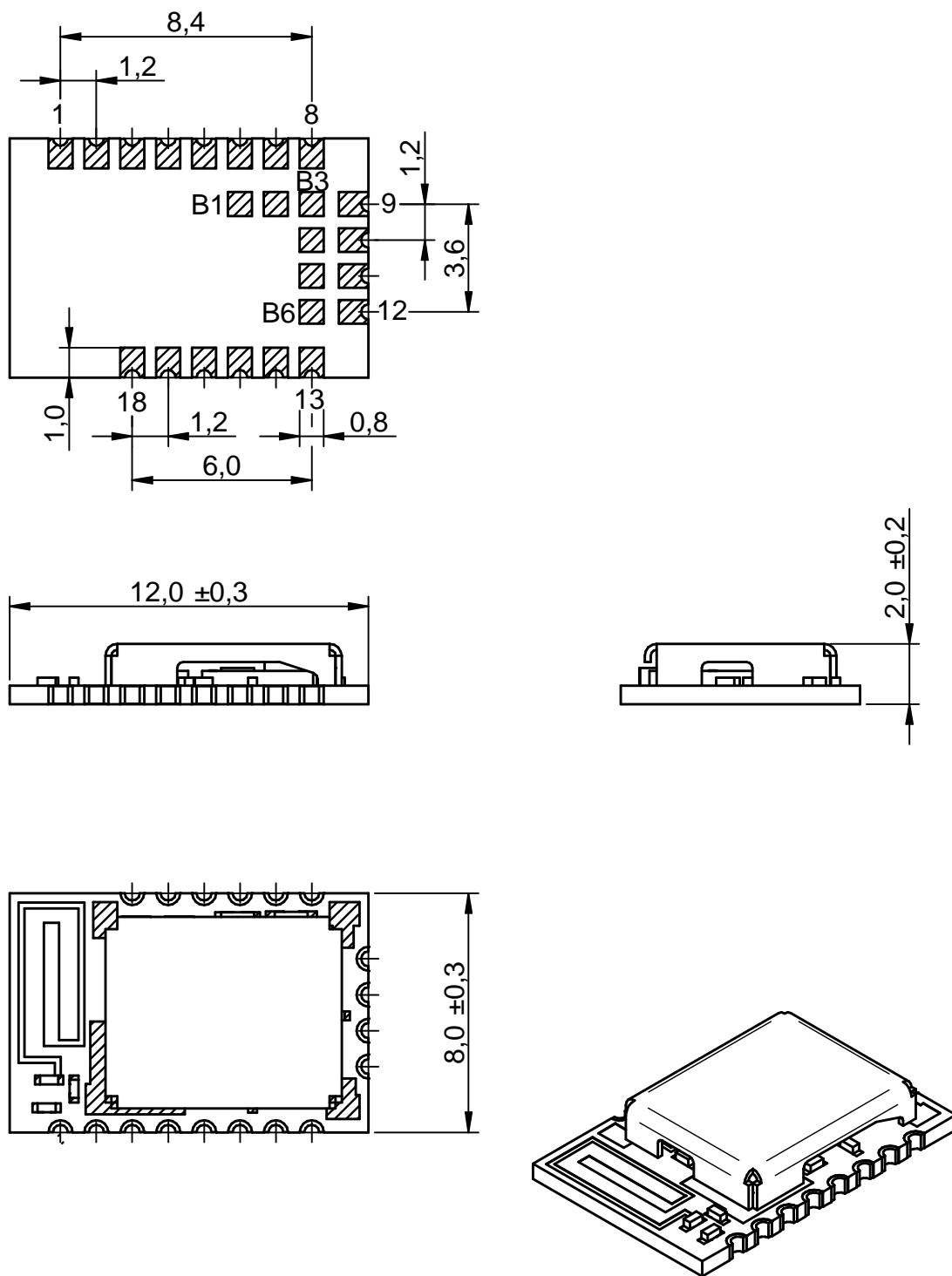


Figure 38: Module dimensions [mm]

23.4. Footprint WE-FP-4+

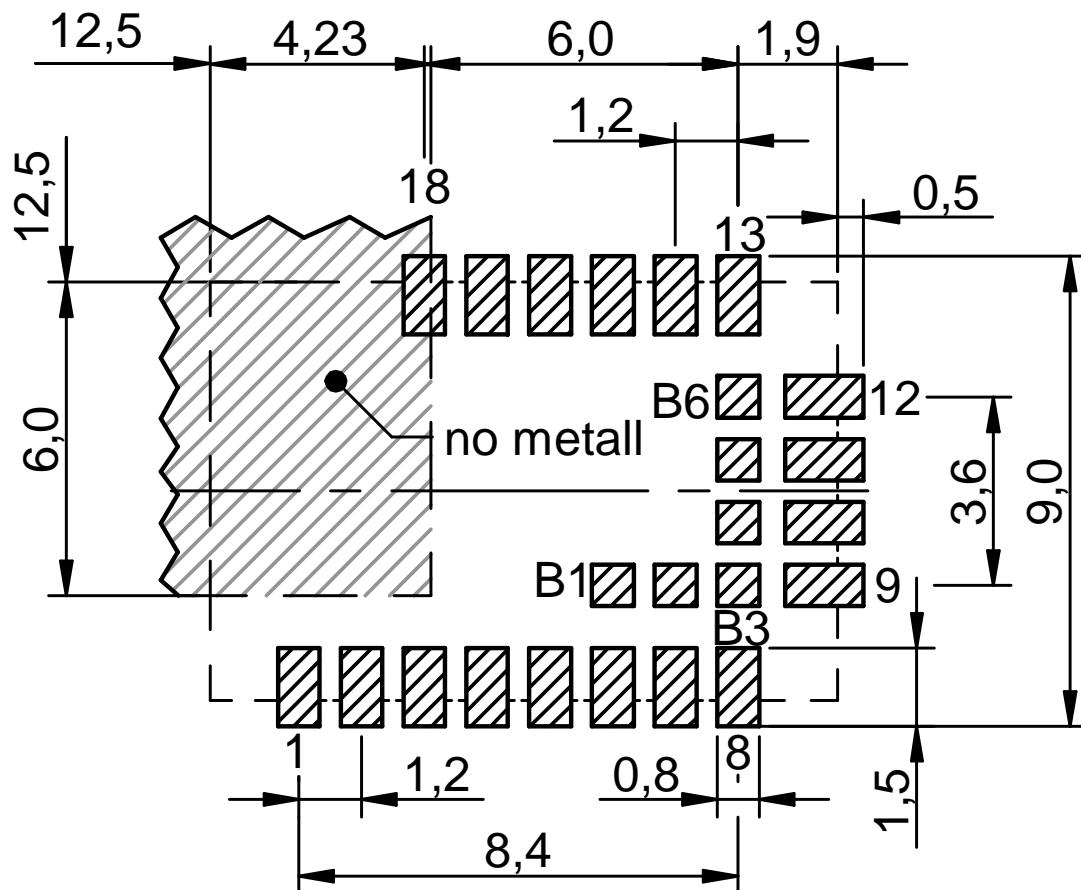


Figure 39: Footprint WE-FP-4+ [mm]

23.5. Antenna free area

To avoid influence and mismatching of the antenna the recommended free area around the antenna should be maintained. As rule of thumb a minimum distance of metal parts to the antenna of $\lambda/10$ should be kept (see figure 39). Even though metal parts would influence the characteristic of the antenna, but the direct influence and matching keep an acceptable level.

24. Marking

24.1. Lot number

The 15 digit lot number is printed in numerical digits as well as in form of a machine readable bar code. It is divided into 5 blocks as shown in the following picture and can be translated according to the following table.

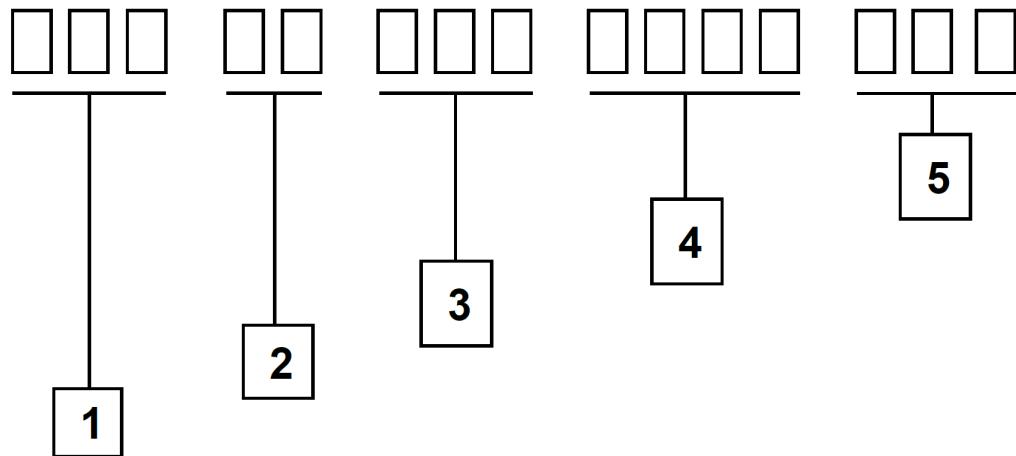


Figure 40: Lot number structure

Block	Information	Example(s)
1	eiSos internal, 3 digits	438
2	eiSos internal, 2 digits	01
3	Radio module hardware version, 3 digits	V2.4 = 024, V12.2 = 122
4	Date code, 4 digits	1703 = week 03 in year 2017, 1816 = week 16 in year 2018
5	Radio module firmware version, 3 digits	V3.2 = 302, V5.13 = 513

Table 81: Lot number details

As the user can perform a firmware update the printed lot number only shows the factory delivery state. The currently installed firmware can be requested from the module using the corresponding product specific command. The firmware version as well as the hardware version are restricted to show only major and minor version not the patch identifier. Block 5 is not applicable for products without firmware.

24.2. General labeling information

Labels of Würth Elektronik eiSos radio modules include several fields. Besides the manufacturer identification, the product's *WE* order code, serial number and certification information are placed on the label. In case of small labels, additional certification marks are placed on the label of the reel.

The information on the label are fixed. Only the serial number changes with each entity of the radio module. For Proteus-III the label is as follows:

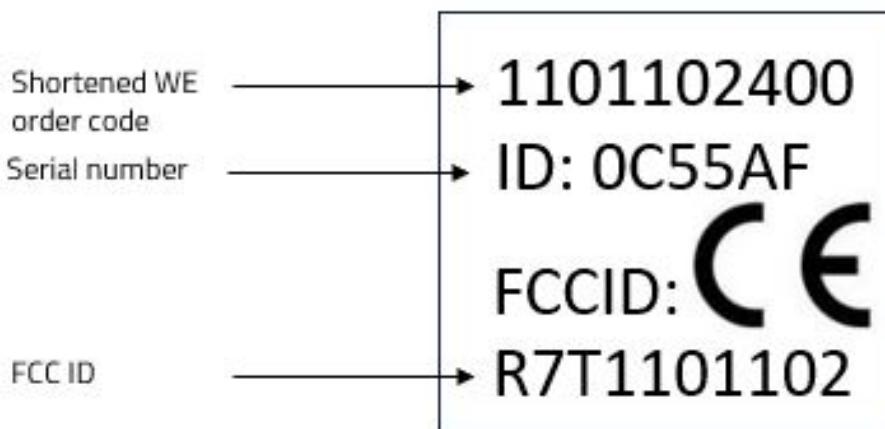


Figure 41: Label of the Proteus-III

25. Information for explosion protection

In case the end product should be used in explosion protection areas the following information can be used:

- The module itself is unfused.
- The maximum output power of the module is 6 dBm for external antenna and 4 dBm for internal antenna.
- The total amount of capacitance of all capacitors is 7.2 μ F.
- The total amount of inductance of all inductors is 10.025 μ H.
- A DC/DC regulator is included in the chip set and used to obtain low power functionality.

26. Bluetooth SIG listing/qualification

Type	Data
Design name	Proteus-III
Declaration ID	D047845
QDID	141060
Specification name	5.1
Project type	End product

Each product containing intellectual property of the Bluetooth® Special Interest Group (SIG) must be qualified by the SIG to obtain the corresponding Declaration ID.

Due to the qualification of the Proteus-III as end product no further Bluetooth® tests are required. The only arising expenses are those for purchasing a Bluetooth® Declaration ID.

To obtain the Bluetooth® listing of the end device, please refer to the application note ANR027 [9].

27. Regulatory compliance information

27.1. Important notice EU

The use of RF frequencies is limited by national regulations. The Proteus-III has been designed to comply with the RED directive 2014/53/EU of the European Union (EU).

The Proteus-III can be operated without notification and free of charge in the area of the European Union. However, according to the RED directive, restrictions (e.g. in terms of duty cycle or maximum allowed RF power) may apply.

Modifications (2014/53/EU article 3 (i))

Caution: Changes or modifications for this equipment not expressly approved by Würth Elektronik eiSos may void the CE conformity to operate this equipment.



Since the module itself is not fused the voltage supply shall be fed from a power source which is class PS2 according to EN 62368-1.

27.2. Important notice FCC

The use of RF frequencies is limited by national regulations. The Proteus-III has been designed to comply with the FCC Part 15.

The Proteus-III can be operated without notification and free of charge in the area of the United States of America. However, according to the FCC Part 15, restrictions (e.g. in terms of maximum allowed RF power and antenna) may apply.

27.3. Conformity assessment of the final product

The Proteus-III is a subassembly. It is designed to be embedded into other products (products incorporating the Proteus-III are henceforward referred to as "final products").

It is the responsibility of the manufacturer of the final product to ensure that the final product is in compliance with the essential requirements of the underlying national radio regulations.

The conformity assessment of the subassembly Proteus-III carried out by Würth Elektronik eiSos does not replace the required conformity assessment of the final product.

27.4. Exemption clause

Relevant regulation requirements are subject to change. Würth Elektronik eiSos does not guarantee the accuracy of the before mentioned information. Directives, technical standards, procedural descriptions and the like may be interpreted differently by the national authorities. Equally, the national laws and restrictions may vary with the country. In case of doubt or uncertainty, we recommend that you consult with the authorities or official certification organizations of the relevant countries. Würth Elektronik eiSos is exempt from any responsibilities or liabilities related to regulatory compliance.

Notwithstanding the above, Würth Elektronik eiSos makes no representations and warranties of any kind related to their accuracy, correctness, completeness and/or usability for customer applications. No responsibility is assumed for inaccuracies or incompleteness.

27.5. EU Declaration of conformity



EU DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Radio equipment: 2611011024000

The manufacturer: Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG
Max-Eyth-Straße 1
74638 Waldenburg

This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.

Object of the declaration: 2611011024000

The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation Directive 2014/53/EU. Following harmonised norms or technical specifications have been applied:

EN 300 328 V2.2.2 (2019-07)
EN 301 489-1 V2.2.3 (2019-11)
EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1 (2024-09)
EN 62479 : 2010
EN 62368-1:2014 + AC:2015 +A11:2019
2011/65/EU with its amending Annex II EU 2015/863

i.A. G. Esplandier

Trier, 12th of January 2026

Place and date of issue

27.6. RED-DA Cybersecurity statement

Cybersecurity as per articles 3.3d, 3.3e and 3.3f of the Radio Equipment Directive Delegated Act. The RED-DA mandates to comply to the EN 18031-1, 18031-2 and 18031-3 in order to fulfill the requirements of the cybersecurity chapters (d, e and f).

- EN 18031-1: Common security requirements for radio equipment - Part 1: Internet connected radio equipment
- EN 18031-2: Common security requirements for radio equipment - Part 2: Radio equipment processing data, namely internet connected radio equipment, childcare radio equipment, toys radio equipment and wearable radio equipment
- EN 18031-3: Common security requirements for radio equipment - Part 3: Internet connected radio equipment processing virtual money or monetary value

Requirements	Statement and conditions
(d) Radio equipment does not harm the network or its functioning nor misuses network resources, thereby causing an unacceptable degradation of service	<p>"Not applicable": The product is not capable itself to communicate over the internet. The product is only able to communicate via the following protocols and interfaces. None of the protocols contained in the product are "internet-connectable".</p> <p>Radio communication protocols: This Bluetooth (2.1, 4.x, 5.x, 6.x) product does not support or include the "Internet Protocol Support Profile". Bluetooth is a set of radio standards (e.g. Bluetooth Classic, Bluetooth Low Energy, Bluetooth MESH, Bluetooth LE Audio, ...) maintained by the Bluetooth SIG.</p> <p>Host Interface, wired: The host interface of the product does not support internet connectivity. UART is used as a wired communication and control channel towards the customers host.</p>
(e) Radio equipment incorporates safeguards to ensure that the personal data and privacy of the user and of the subscriber are protected	<p>"Not applicable": The product is not internet connected. The product does not pose a risk to the users or subscribers privacy, as it does not store or process any personal data.</p>
(f) Radio equipment supports certain features ensuring protection from fraud	<p>"Not applicable": The product is not internet connected. The product does not pose a risk of fraud because it does not store or process financial data or enables financial transactions.</p>

27.7. UK Declaration of conformity



DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Product: Proteus-III Bluetooth 5.1 Radio Module
Model/type: 2611011024000

The manufacturer: Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG
Max-Eyth-Straße 1
74638 Waldenburg
Germany

The importer: Wurth Electronics UK Limited
8 The Vic, MediacityUK
M50 3SP Manchester
United Kingdom

This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.

Object of the declaration: 2611011024000

The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant UK Statutory Instrument: The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 (S.I. 2017 No. 1206).

References to the relevant designated standards used or references to the other technical specifications in relation to which conformity is declared:

EN 300 328 V2.2.2 (2019-07)
EN 301 489-1 V2.2.3 (2019-11)
EN 301 489-17 V3.2.4 (2020-09)
EN 62479 : 2010
EN 62368-1:2014 + AC:2015 +A11:2019
S.I. 2012 No.3032

i.A. G. Eckhardt

Gudrun Eckhardt, Teamleader Hardware Development, Trier, 26th of April 2023
Name, Function, Place and date of issue

27.8. FCC Compliance Statement (US)

FCC ID: R7T1101102

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause
undesired operation.
(FCC 15.19)

Modifications (FCC 15.21)

Caution: Changes or modifications for this equipment not expressly approved by Würth Elektronik eiSos may void the FCC authorization to operate this equipment.

27.8.1. FCC certificate

		
GRANT OF EQUIPMENT AUTHORIZATION Certification Issued Under the Authority of the Federal Communications Commission By: Telefication B.V. Edisonstraat 12a Zeewaard, NL-6902 PK Netherlands		
Date of Grant: 11/27/2019		Application Dated: 11/06/2019
Wuerth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co KG Max-Eyth-Straße 1 Waldenburg, 74638 Germany		
Attention: Gudrun Eckhardt, Manager		
NOT TRANSFERABLE		
EQUIPMENT AUTHORIZATION is hereby issued to the named GRANTEE , and is VALID ONLY for the equipment identified hereon for use under the Commission's Rules and Regulations listed below.		
FCC IDENTIFIER: R7T1101102		
Name of Grantee: Wuerth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co KG		
Equipment Class: Digital Transmitter System		
Notes: Radio module HVIN 1101102		
Modular Type: Single Modular		
Grant Notes	FCC Rule Parts	Frequency Range (MHz)
CC	15C	2402.0 - 2480.0
Output Watts	0.0042	Frequency Tolerance
Emission Designator		
Output power listed is conducted. Single modular approval for portable RF Exposure conditions. Approval is limited to OEM installation only. OEM integrators must be provided with antenna installation instructions. OEM integrators must be provided with minimum operating conditions for satisfying RF exposure controls. This grant is valid only when the device is sold to OEM integrators and the OEM integrators are instructed to ensure that the end user has no manual instructions to remove or install the device. Only those antenna(s) tested with the device or similar antenna(s) with equal or lesser gain may be used with this transmitter.		
CC: This device is certified pursuant to two different Part 15 rules sections.		
Certificate No.: 192180963/AA/00	Gürhan Vural Product Assessor	

Figure 42: FCC certificate

27.9. IC Compliance Statement (Canada)

Certification Number: 5136A-1101102

HVIN: 1101102

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

27.9.1. IC certificate

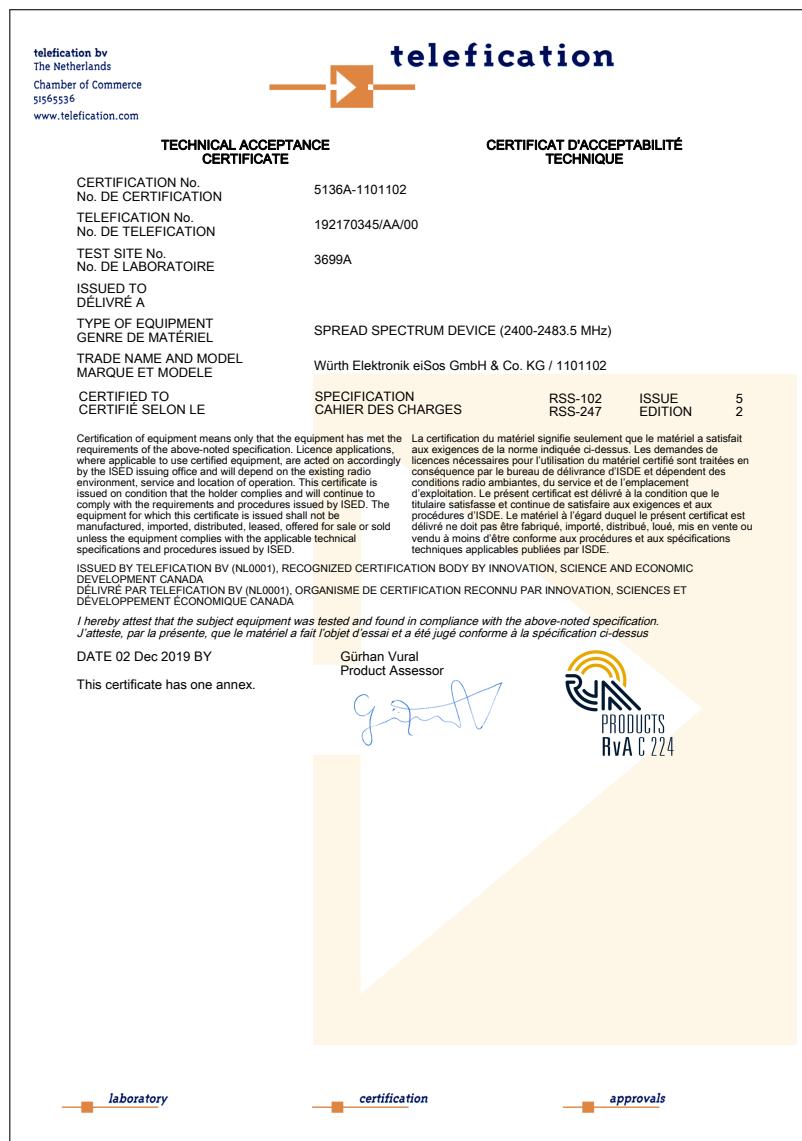


Figure 43: IC certificate

27.10. FCC and IC requirements to OEM integrators

This module has been granted modular approval. OEM integrators for host products may use the module in their final products without additional FCC/IC (Industry Canada) certification if they meet the following conditions. Otherwise, additional FCC/IC approvals must be obtained. The host product with the module installed must be evaluated for simultaneous transmission requirements.

- The users manual for the host product must clearly indicate the operating requirements and conditions that must be observed to ensure compliance with current FCC/IC RF exposure guidelines.
- A label must be affixed to the outside of the host product with the following statements:
This device contains FCC ID: R7T1101102
This equipment contains equipment certified under IC ID: 5136A-1101102
- The final host / module combination may also need to be evaluated against the FCC Part 15B criteria for unintentional radiators in order to be properly authorized for operation as a Part 15 digital device.
- If the final host / module combination is intended for use as a portable device (see classifications below) the host manufacturer is responsible for separate approvals for the SAR requirements from FCC Part 2.1093 and RSS-102.

OEM requirements:

The OEM must ensure that the following conditions are met.

- The Proteus-III will be used at a distance of at least 10 mm to the human body.
- End users of products, which contain the module, must not have the ability to alter the firmware that governs the operation of the module. The agency grant is valid only when the module is incorporated into a final product by OEM integrators.
- The end-user must not be provided with instructions to remove, adjust or install the module.
- The Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) must ensure that FCC labeling requirements are met. This includes a clearly visible label on the outside of the final product. Attaching a label to a removable portion of the final product, such as a battery cover, is not permitted.
- The label must include the following text:
Contains FCC ID: R7T1101102
The enclosed device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(i.) this device may not cause harmful interference and
(ii.) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

When the device is so small or for such use that it is not practicable to place the statement

above on it, the information required by this paragraph shall be placed in a prominent location in the instruction manual or pamphlet supplied to the user or, alternatively, shall be placed on the container in which the device is marketed. However, the FCC identifier or the unique identifier, as appropriate, must be displayed on the device.

- The user manual for the end product must also contain the text given above.
 - Changes or modifications not expressly approved could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
 - The OEM must ensure that timing requirements according to 47 CFR 15.231(a-c) are met.
 - The module must be used with only the following approved antenna(s).

27.10.1. Pre-certified antennas

The Proteus-III is pre-certified with the following antennas.

Product	Certified antenna
Proteus-III (2611011024000)	PCB antenna included in the Proteus-III

27.11. TELEC radio law approval (Japan)

Japanese Radio Law Compliance



This device has passed the Radio Law approval for Japan through the registered certification body TELEC. The corresponding ARIB (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses) standard has been applied. Accordingly, the market approval is given by the MIC (Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications).

ID-Code
(Interference
provision)

This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid)

The MAC address of the radio device maintains the format 00:18:DA:xx:xx:xx. The latter part xx:xx:xx of the MAC address coincides with the serial number of the device.

27.11.1. Label

Due to the small size of the Proteus-III label, the certification label of the Proteus-III is not placed onto the module label.

2611011024000:



R 201-190950



After integration of the Proteus-III in the end device, the corresponding certification label must be recognized from the outside. Otherwise this information must be referenced on the housing as well as in the user manual. E labeling is allowed.

27.11.2. Certified antennas

The Proteus-III is pre-certified with the following antennas².

Product	Certified antenna
Proteus-III (2611011024000)	PCB antenna included in the Proteus-III

27.11.3. TELEC certificate



Figure 44: TELEC certificate

²Additional, not yet certified, antennas must be re-certified without retesting. Only antenna gain and antenna characteristic diagrams must be specified. Please contact your Business Development Engineer (BDM) to get support in certifying your own antenna.

27.12. SRRC Compliance Statement (China)

CMIIT ID: 2022DJ16137

The Proteus-III complies with the provisions on the Radio Regulations of the People's Republic of China. The Type Approval Certificate is valid till 31st December 2025.

Due to the small size of the Proteus-III label the CMIIT ID is placed on the packaging label.

27.12.1. SRRC certificate



Figure 45: SRRC certificate

27.13. ETA-WPC (India)

Registration No: ETA-SD-20230302017 Date: 06-04-2023

The Proteus-III complies with the provisions on the Equipment Type Approval WPC Wing for India.

27.13.1. ETA-WPC certificate

 सत्यमेव जयते	Government of India Ministry of Communications Department of Telecommunications WPC Wing Sanchar Bhawan, New Delhi-110001.																														
<small>[Generation of Equipment Type Approval (ETA) through self-declaration issued under O.M. No. ETA-WPC /Policy/2018-19 dated 26 February, 2019].</small>																															
<small>THIS ETA IS ISSUED FOR A SINGLE MODEL WITH MODEL NAME <u>Proteus-III</u></small>																															
<small>Registration No: ETA-SD-20230302017</small>	<small>Date: 06-04-2023</small>																														
<small>I). Details of Applicant and Parameters of Equipment:</small>																															
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">1.</td> <td colspan="2">Name & Address of the first Applicant. (Indian Manufacturer/ Authorised Indian representative for foreign manufacturer)</td> <td colspan="2">WURTH ELECTRONICS SERVICES INDIA PRIVATE LIMITED, Ground and 1st Floor, No. 3, Prestige Sterling Square, Madras Bank Road, Next to Airlines Hotel, Bangalore, Bengaluru Bangalore Urban, Karnataka, 560001, Bangalore Urban,KARNATAKA,560001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2.</td> <td colspan="2">Equipment category</td> <td colspan="2">Bluetooth Low Energy Module</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3.</td> <td colspan="2">Make</td> <td colspan="2">Wurth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG,Germany</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4.</td> <td colspan="2">Model</td> <td colspan="2">Proteus-III</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5.</td> <td colspan="2">Frequency range(s) of Equipment</td> <td colspan="2">1. 2402-2480 MHz</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6.</td> <td colspan="2">Max output power/Field strength/PSD</td> <td colspan="2">1. E.I.R.P. (dBm). 4</td> </tr> </table>		1.	Name & Address of the first Applicant. (Indian Manufacturer/ Authorised Indian representative for foreign manufacturer)		WURTH ELECTRONICS SERVICES INDIA PRIVATE LIMITED, Ground and 1st Floor, No. 3, Prestige Sterling Square, Madras Bank Road, Next to Airlines Hotel, Bangalore, Bengaluru Bangalore Urban, Karnataka, 560001, Bangalore Urban,KARNATAKA,560001		2.	Equipment category		Bluetooth Low Energy Module		3.	Make		Wurth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG,Germany		4.	Model		Proteus-III		5.	Frequency range(s) of Equipment		1. 2402-2480 MHz		6.	Max output power/Field strength/PSD		1. E.I.R.P. (dBm). 4	
1.	Name & Address of the first Applicant. (Indian Manufacturer/ Authorised Indian representative for foreign manufacturer)		WURTH ELECTRONICS SERVICES INDIA PRIVATE LIMITED, Ground and 1st Floor, No. 3, Prestige Sterling Square, Madras Bank Road, Next to Airlines Hotel, Bangalore, Bengaluru Bangalore Urban, Karnataka, 560001, Bangalore Urban,KARNATAKA,560001																												
2.	Equipment category		Bluetooth Low Energy Module																												
3.	Make		Wurth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG,Germany																												
4.	Model		Proteus-III																												
5.	Frequency range(s) of Equipment		1. 2402-2480 MHz																												
6.	Max output power/Field strength/PSD		1. E.I.R.P. (dBm). 4																												
<small>1 / 2</small>																															

Figure 46: ETA-WPC certificate page 1

7.	Applicable Gazette Notification(s)	1. 45 (E) Dated 28-01-2005	
8.	RF Test Report details:-		
	Name&Address /Country of accredited laboratory issuing the RF test report	Accreditation Certificate Reference/Number	Test Report No. and Date
	7layers GmbH & Borsigstrasse 11 40880 Ratingen Germany	D-PL-12140-01-03	MDE_WUERTH_1901_RADIO01 & 15-10-2019

II). Terms and Conditions

- (i). This certificate will not be valid in case any change in the above parameters and not conforming to the Gazette Notification mentioned in sl.no 7 above.
- (ii). Use of such equipment has been exempted from licensing requirement vide Gazette Notification mentioned in sl. no. 7, on Non-interference, Non-protection and sharing (non-exclusive) basis.
- (iii). Use of such equipment in case not conforming to above notification will require a specific wireless operating license, as applicable from this Ministry.
- (iv). Field units of WPC Wing reserve the right for sample check/audit carried out for the purpose of RF analysis/spectrum monitoring in view to avoid interference to other wireless users and ensure compliance of technical parameters mentioned in sl no. 5,6&7.
- (v). This certificate is valid only for equipment which are exempted from import licensing requirements as per the Import Policy of DGFT and for import of such device, a self-declaration based, system generated (Saralsanchar) Import undertaking/ permission is required.
- (vi). The applicant is liable for prosecution under Indian Law in case of any wrong declaration/ submission of ingenuine RF test report(s) for issue of ETA through Self-Declaration.

Note:

1. Once ETA through self-declaration is generated for a model, subsequently it may be utilized by other person(s) for import/usage purpose in India.

2. The importers of above model shall comply with other import related requirements, if any, with Customs.

This is Self-generated certificate. Hence, no signature is required. It may be downloaded/verified from the website <https://saralsanchar.gov.in>.

2 / 2

Figure 47: ETA-WPC certificate page 2

27.14. Certification of the end device

For the certification of the end device, which integrates the Proteus-III, it is necessary to run the Bluetooth® direct test modes (DTM) on the Proteus-III and check its radio behavior.

To do that, the Proteus-III standard firmware provides already the required direct test mode commands (see chapter 9.6). These commands follow the radio module's command interface, and must be sent via UART to the Proteus-III.



For running the certification tests, the radio module's UART pins must be exposed to externally control the DTM functions.

In case the test house requires to use a Bluetooth® tester³, the radio module must support the 2-wire DTM protocol on the UART. In this scenario it is necessary to flash the radio module with a 2-wire DTM firmware using the production flash interface mentioned in chapter 16.1.



In case it is required to flash the 2-wire DTM firmware, the SWD pins be exposed as well to use the production programming interface.

The 2-wire DTM firmware is provided on request, as well as the DTM GUI PC tool. This tool is used to send the DTM test commands to the radio module. It supports both protocols, the standard firmware DTM as well as the 2-wire DTM.



Figure 48: Bluetooth® DTM GUI PC tool

³A Bluetooth® tester is a certified device running automated tests on a connected Bluetooth® enabled device.

28. References

- [1] Bluetooth®. Bluetooth® Core Specification, version 5.1. <https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/specs/core-specification-5-1/>.
- [2] Würth Elektronik. Application note 6 - Proteus high throughput mode. <http://www.we-online.com/ANR006>.
- [3] Würth Elektronik. Application note 9 - Proteus-III(-SPI) advanced developer guide. <http://www.we-online.com/ANR009>.
- [4] Würth Elektronik. WE UART Terminal PC tool (Smart Commander). <https://www.we-online.de/wcs-software>.
- [5] IEEE Registration Authority. <https://standards.ieee.org/products-programs/regauth/>.
- [6] Bluetooth®. Bluetooth® Assigned numbers. <https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers/>.
- [7] Nordic Semiconductor. nRF Device Firmware Update app for Android. <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=no.nordicsemi.android.dfu>.
- [8] Nordic Semiconductor. nRF Device Firmware Update app for iOS. <https://apps.apple.com/us/app/device-firmware-update/id1624454660>.
- [9] Würth Elektronik. Application note 27 - Bluetooth listing guide. <http://www.we-online.com/ANR027>.

29. Important notes

The following conditions apply to all goods within the wireless connectivity and sensors product range of Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG:

General customer responsibility

Some goods within the product range of Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG contain statements regarding general suitability for certain application areas. These statements about suitability are based on our knowledge and experience of typical requirements concerning the areas, serve as general guidance and cannot be estimated as binding statements about the suitability for a customer application. The responsibility for the applicability and use in a particular customer design is always solely within the authority of the customer. Due to this fact, it is up to the customer to evaluate, where appropriate to investigate and to decide whether the device with the specific product characteristics described in the product specification is valid and suitable for the respective customer application or not. Accordingly, the customer is cautioned to verify that the documentation is current before placing orders.

Customer responsibility related to specific, in particular safety-relevant applications

It has to be clearly pointed out that the possibility of a malfunction of electronic components or failure before the end of the usual lifetime cannot be completely eliminated in the current state of the art, even if the products are operated within the range of the specifications. The same statement is valid for all software source code and firmware parts contained in or used with or for products in the wireless connectivity and sensor product range of Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG. In certain customer applications requiring a high level of safety and especially in customer applications in which the malfunction or failure of an electronic component could endanger human life or health, it must be ensured by most advanced technological aid of suitable design of the customer application that no injury or damage is caused to third parties in the event of malfunction or failure of an electronic component.

Best care and attention

Any product-specific data sheets, manuals, application notes, PCNs, warnings and cautions must be strictly observed in the most recent versions and matching to the products revisions. These documents can be downloaded from the product specific sections on the wireless connectivity and sensors homepage.

Customer support for product specifications

Some products within the product range may contain substances, which are subject to restrictions in certain jurisdictions in order to serve specific technical requirements. Necessary information is available on request. In this case, the Business Development Engineer (BDM) or the internal sales person in charge should be contacted who will be happy to support in this matter.

Product improvements

Due to constant product improvement, product specifications may change from time to time. As a standard reporting procedure of the Product Change Notification (PCN) according to the JEDEC-Standard, we inform about major changes. In case of further queries regarding the PCN, the Business Development Engineer (BDM), the internal sales person or the technical support team in charge should be contacted. The basic responsibility of the customer as per section 29 and 29 remains unaffected.

All software like "wireless connectivity SDK", "Sensor SDK" or other source codes as well as all PC software tools are not subject to the Product Change Notification information process.

Product life cycle

Due to technical progress and economical evaluation, we also reserve the right to discontinue production and delivery of products. As a standard reporting procedure of the Product Termination Notification (PTN) according to the JEDEC-Standard we will inform at an early stage about inevitable product discontinuance. According to this, we cannot ensure that all products within our product range will always be available. Therefore, it needs to be verified with the Business Development Engineer (BDM) or the internal sales person in charge about the current product availability expectancy before or when the product for application design-in disposal is considered. The approach named above does not apply in the case of individual agreements deviating from the foregoing for customer-specific products.

Property rights

All the rights for contractual products produced by Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG on the basis of ideas, development contracts as well as models or templates that are subject to copyright, patent or commercial protection supplied to the customer will remain with Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG. Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG does not warrant or represent that any license, either expressed or implied, is granted under any patent right, copyright, mask work right, or other intellectual property right relating to any combination, application, or process in which Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG components or services are used.

General terms and conditions

Unless otherwise agreed in individual contracts, all orders are subject to the current version of the "General Terms and Conditions of Würth Elektronik eiSos Group", last version available at www.we-online.com.

30. Legal notice

Exclusion of liability

Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG considers the information in this document to be correct at the time of publication. However, Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG reserves the right to modify the information such as technical specifications or functions of its products or discontinue the production of these products or the support of one of these products without any written announcement or notification to customers. The customer must make sure that the information used corresponds to the latest published information. Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG does not assume any liability for the use of its products. Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG does not grant licenses for its patent rights or for any other of its intellectual property rights or third-party rights.

Notwithstanding anything above, Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG makes no representations and/or warranties of any kind for the

provided information related to their accuracy, correctness, completeness, usage of the products and/or usability for customer applications. Information published by Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG regarding third-party products or services does not constitute a license to use such products or services or a warranty or endorsement thereof.

Suitability in customer applications

The customer bears the responsibility for compliance of systems or units, in which Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG products are integrated, with applicable legal regulations. Customer acknowledges and agrees that it is solely responsible for compliance with all legal, regulatory and safety-related requirements concerning its products, and any use of Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG components in its applications, notwithstanding any applications-related information or support that may be provided by Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG. Customer represents and agrees that it has all the necessary expertise to create and implement safeguards which anticipate dangerous consequences of failures, monitor failures and their consequences lessen the likelihood of failures that might cause harm and take appropriate remedial actions. The customer will fully indemnify Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG and its representatives against any damages arising out of the use of any Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG components in safety-critical applications.

Trademarks

AMBER wireless is a registered trademark of Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG. All other trademarks, registered trademarks, and product names are the exclusive property of the respective owners.

Usage restriction

Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG products have been designed and developed for usage in general electronic equipment only. This product is not authorized for use in equipment where a higher safety standard and reliability standard is especially required or where a failure of the product is reasonably expected to cause severe personal injury or death, unless the parties have executed an agreement specifically governing such use. Moreover, Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG products are neither designed nor intended for use in areas such as military, aerospace, aviation, nuclear control, submarine, transportation (automotive control, train control, ship control), transportation signal, disaster prevention, medical, public information network etc. Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG must be informed about the intent of such usage before the design-in stage. In addition, sufficient reliability evaluation checks for safety must be performed on every electronic component, which is used in electrical circuits that require high safety and reliability function or performance. By using Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG products, the customer agrees to these terms and conditions.

31. License terms

These License terms will take effect upon the purchase and usage of the Würth Elektronik eisOS GmbH & Co. KG wireless connectivity products. You hereby agree that these license terms are applicable to the product and the incorporated software, firmware and source codes (collectively, "Software") made available by Würth Elektronik eisOS in any form, including but not limited to binary, executable or source code form. The software included in any Würth Elektronik eisOS wireless connectivity product is purchased to you on the condition that you accept the terms and conditions of these license terms. You agree to comply with all provisions under these license terms.

Limited license

Würth Elektronik eisOS hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable and royalty-free license to use the software and under the conditions that will be set forth in these license terms. You are free to use the provided software only in connection with one of the products from Würth Elektronik eisOS to the extent described in these license terms. You are entitled to change or alter the source code for the sole purpose of creating an application embedding the Würth Elektronik eisOS wireless connectivity product. The transfer of the source code to third parties is allowed to the sole extent that the source code is used by such third parties in connection with our product or another hardware provided by Würth Elektronik eisOS under strict adherence of these license terms. Würth Elektronik eisOS will not assume any liability for the usage of the incorporated software and the source code. You are not entitled to transfer the source code in any form to third parties without prior written consent of Würth Elektronik eisOS.

You are not allowed to reproduce, translate, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble or create derivative works of the incorporated software and the source code in whole or in part. No more extensive rights to use and exploit the products are granted to you.

Usage and obligations

The responsibility for the applicability and use of the Würth Elektronik eisOS wireless connectivity product with the incorporated firmware in a particular customer design is always solely within the authority of the customer. Due to this fact, it is up to you to evaluate and investigate, where appropriate, and to decide whether the device with the specific product characteristics described in the product specification is valid and suitable for your respective application or not.

You are responsible for using the Würth Elektronik eisOS wireless connectivity product with the incorporated firmware in compliance with all applicable product liability and product safety laws. You acknowledge to minimize the risk of loss and harm to individuals and bear the risk for failure leading to personal injury or death due to your usage of the product.

Würth Elektronik eisOS' products with the incorporated firmware are not authorized for use in safety-critical applications, or where a failure of the product is reasonably expected to cause severe personal injury or death. Moreover, Würth Elektronik eisOS' products with the incorporated firmware are neither designed nor intended for use in areas such as military, aerospace, aviation, nuclear control, submarine, transportation (automotive control, train control, ship control), transportation signal, disaster prevention, medical, public information network etc. You shall inform Würth Elektronik eisOS about the intent of such usage before design-in stage. In certain customer applications requiring a very high level of safety and in which the malfunction or failure of an electronic component could endanger human life or health, you must ensure to have all necessary expertise in the safety and regulatory ramifications of your applications. You acknowledge and agree that you are solely responsible for all legal, regulatory and safety-related requirements concerning your products and any use of Würth Elektronik eisOS' products with the incorporated firmware in such safety-critical applications, notwithstanding any applications-related information or support that may be provided by Würth Elektronik eisOS. YOU SHALL INDEMNIFY WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK EISOS AGAINST ANY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK EISOS' PRODUCTS WITH THE INCORPORATED FIRMWARE IN SUCH SAFETY-CRITICAL APPLICATIONS.

Ownership

User manual Proteus-III

The incorporated firmware created by Würth Elektronik eiSos is and will remain the exclusive property of Würth Elektronik eiSos.

Firmware update(s)

You have the opportunity to request the current and actual firmware for a bought wireless connectivity product within the time of warranty. However, Würth Elektronik eiSos has no obligation to update a modules firmware in their production facilities, but can offer this as a service on request. The upload of firmware updates falls within your responsibility, e.g. via ACC or another software for firmware updates. Firmware updates will not be communicated automatically. It is within your responsibility to check the current version of a firmware in the latest version of the product manual on our website. The revision table in the product manual provides all necessary information about firmware updates. There is no right to be provided with binary files, so called "firmware images", those could be flashed through JTAG, SWD, Spi-Bi-Wire, SPI or similar interfaces.

Disclaimer of warranty

THE FIRMWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS". YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK EISOS MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND RELATED TO, BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTIES' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR THE MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR YOUR INTENDED PURPOSE OR USAGE. WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK EISOS DOES NOT WARRANT OR REPRESENT THAT ANY LICENSE, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, IS GRANTED UNDER ANY PATENT RIGHT, COPYRIGHT, MASK WORK RIGHT, OR OTHER INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHT RELATING TO ANY COMBINATION, MACHINE, OR PROCESS IN WHICH THE WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK EISOS' PRODUCT WITH THE INCORPORATED FIRMWARE IS USED. INFORMATION PUBLISHED BY WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK EISOS REGARDING THIRD-PARTY PRODUCTS OR SERVICES DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A LICENSE FROM WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK EISOS TO USE SUCH PRODUCTS OR SERVICES OR A WARRANTY OR ENDORSEMENT THEREOF.

Limitation of liability

Any liability not expressly provided by Würth Elektronik eiSos shall be disclaimed.

You agree to hold us harmless from any third-party claims related to your usage of the Würth Elektronik eiSos' products with the incorporated firmware, software and source code. Würth Elektronik eiSos disclaims any liability for any alteration, development created by you or your customers as well as for any combination with other products.

Applicable law and jurisdiction

Applicable law to these license terms shall be the laws of the Federal Republic of Germany. Any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to these license terms shall be resolved and finally settled by the court competent for the location of Würth Elektronik eiSos registered office.

Severability clause

If a provision of these license terms is or becomes invalid, unenforceable or null and void, this shall not affect the remaining provisions of the terms. The parties shall replace any such provisions with new valid provisions that most closely approximate the purpose of the terms.

Miscellaneous

Würth Elektronik eiSos reserves the right at any time to change these terms at its own discretion. It is your responsibility to check at Würth Elektronik eiSos homepage for any updates. Your continued usage of the products will be deemed as the acceptance of the change.

We recommend you to be updated about the status of new firmware and software, which is available on our website or in our data sheet and manual, and to implement new software in your device where appropriate.

By ordering a product, you accept these license terms in all terms.

List of Figures

1. Proteus-III	16
2. Block diagram of the module	19
3. Radio transmitting @ 8 dBm output power, 1 Mbps Bluetooth® LE mode, Clock = HFXO, Regulator = DC/DC (typical values)	22
4. Current consumption calculation in advertising mode with 40 ms advertising interval with 8 dBm output power, UART/SPI disabled	23
5. Pinout (top view)	26
6. Minimal pin connections	29
7. Power up	32
8. State overview	37
9. DTM flow chart	58
10. Command sequence when transmitting data	183
11. Switch of the <i>BUSY</i> pin when transmitting data	187
12. Handling the <i>/RTS</i> and <i>BUSY</i> pin	188
13. Configure the local GPIOs via local host	190
14. Configure the local GPIOs via remote device host	190
15. Read the configuration of the local GPIOs via local host	191
16. Read the configuration of the local GPIOs via remote device host	191
17. Set the output value of a GPIO via host controller	192
18. Read the input value of a GPIO via host controller	192
19. Set the output value of a GPIO via remote device	193
20. Read the input value of a GPIO via remote device	193
21. PWM behaviour	194
22. nRF Device Firmware Update app	202
a. Select file and device	202
b. Scan list	202
c. FOTA running	202
23. Layout	207
24. Placement of the module with integrated antenna	208
25. Dimensioning the antenna connection as micro strip	208
26. Himalia dipole antenna	211
27. Reference design: Schematic page 1	213
28. Reference design: Schematic page 2	214
29. Reference design: Layout	215
30. Antenna characteristic of the module with its integrated antenna measured on the official EV-Board (2611149024001)	216
31. Trace design: Layout	217
32. Reference design: Stack-up	217
33. Trace design: Schematic	218
34. On-board PCB antenna	219
35. External antenna connection	219
36. Reset IC	220
37. Reflow soldering profile	222
38. Module dimensions [mm]	228
39. Footprint WE-FP-4+ [mm]	229
40. Lot number structure	230

41. Label of the Proteus-III	231
42. FCC certificate	239
43. IC certificate	240
44. TELEC certificate	244
45. SRRCC certificate	245
46. ETA-WPC certificate page 1	246
47. ETA-WPC certificate page 2	247
48. Bluetooth® DTM GUI PC tool	248

List of Tables

3. Ordering information	19
4. Operating conditions	20
5. Absolute maximum ratings	20
6. Power consumption for 100% transmission/reception	21
7. Timing and RSSI	24
8. Transmit and receive power	24
9. Sensitivity at different data rates	24
10. Pin characteristics	25
11. Pinout	28
18. LED behavior of the Proteus-III	38
63. Message overview: Requests	122
64. Message overview: Confirmations	123
65. Message overview: Indications	124
66. nRF52840 IC revision overview	126
67. Security configuration flags	136
68. Scan configuration flags	139
69. Beacon configuration flags	141
70. Advertising packet configuration flags	144
72. Table of settings	180
73. Maximum throughput timings, packet error rate = 0%	184
74. Supported GPIO_IDs	195
75. UUID default values	197
76. Compatibility matrix	201
78. Classification reflow soldering profile, Note: refer to IPC/JEDEC J-STD-020E	221
79. Dimensions	227
80. Weight	227
81. Lot number details	230
83. CRC8 Test Vectors	255

A. Additional CRC8 Information

This Annex gives an example CRC8 implementation and test vectors.

A.1. Example CRC8 Implementation

```
#include <stdint.h>

uint8_t Get_CRC8(uint8_t * bufP, uint16_t len)
{
    uint8_t crc = 0x00;
    for (uint16_t i = 0; i < len; i++)
    {
        crc ^= bufP[i];
    }
    return crc;
}
```

Code 1: Example CRC8 Implementation

A.2. CRC8 Test Vectors

Input data	Data length	Resulting CRC8
Null	0	0x00
0x02 0x01 0x00 0x00	4	0x03
0x02 0x87 0x01 0x00 0x16	5	0x92
0x02 0x04 0x04 0x00 0x41 0x42 0x43 0x44	8	0x06
0x02 0x88 0x07 0x00 0x00 0x55 0x00 0x00 0xDA 0x18 0x00	11	0x1A

Table 83: CRC8 Test Vectors

B. Example code for host integration

The following code is an example implementation of a function to transmit data using a 2 byte length field in the command frame. For demonstration reasons, the Proteus-III has been taken. The full function codes of all radio modules are available in the Wireless Connectivity SDK (www.we-online.com/wco-SDK).

```
#define CMD_PAYLOAD_MAX 964
typedef struct {
    uint8_t Stx;
    uint8_t Cmd;
    uint16_t Length;           /* LSB first */
    uint8_t Data[CMD_PAYLOAD_MAX+1]; /* +1 for CRC8 */
} CMD_Frame_t;
#define CMD_OFFSET_TO_DATAFIELD 4
#define CMD_OVERHEAD (CMD_OFFSET_TO_DATAFIELD+1)

bool ProteusIII_Transmit(uint8_t *PayloadP, uint16_t length)
{
    /* fill request message with STX, command byte and length field */
    CMD_Frame_t CMD_Frame;
    CMD_Frame.Stx = CMD_STX; /* 0x02 */
    CMD_Frame.Cmd = ProteusIII_CMD_DATA_REQ; /* 0x04 */
    CMD_Frame.Length = length;

    /* fill request message with user payload */
    memcpy(CMD_Frame.Data, PayloadP, length);

    /* fill request message with CRC8 */
    CMD_Frame.Data[CMD_Frame.Length] = Get_CRC8(&CMD_Frame, CMD_Frame.Length +
        CMD_OFFSET_TO_DATAFIELD);

    /* transmit full message via UART to radio module */
    UART_SendBytes(&CMD_Frame, (CMD_Frame.Length + CMD_OVERHEAD));

    /* wait for response message from radio module */
    return UART_Wait_for_Response(CMD_WAIT_TIME, ProteusIII_CMD_TXCOMPLETE_RSP,
        CMD_Status_Success, true);
}
```

Code 2: Example function implementation for radio modules with 2 byte length field



Contact

Würth Elektronik eiSos GmbH & Co. KG
Division Wireless Connectivity & Sensors

Max-Eyth-Straße 1
74638 Waldenburg
Germany

Tel.: +49 651 99355-0
Fax.: +49 651 99355-69
www.we-online.com/wireless-connectivity

WÜRTH ELEKTRONIK MORE THAN YOU EXPECT